

## 高中英語語法大全

### 詞法

#### 第1章 主謂一致

##### 一.概念:

主謂一致是指:

- 1) 語法形式上要一致, 即單複數形式與謂語要一致。
- 2) 意義上要一致, 即主語意義上的單複數要與謂語的單複數形式一致。
- 3) 就近原則, 即謂語動詞的單複形式取決於最靠近它的詞語,  
一般來說, 不可數名詞用動詞單數, 可數名詞複數用動詞複數。例如:  
There is much water in the thermos.  
但當不可數名詞前有表示數量的複數名詞時, 謂語動詞用複數形式。

例如: Ten thousand tons of coal were produced last year.

##### 二.相關知識點精講

1. 並列結構作主語時謂語用複數, 例如:

Reading and writing are very important. 讀寫很重要。

注意: 當主語由and連結時, 如果它表示一個單一的概念, 即指同一人或同一物時, 謂語動詞用單數, and 此時連接的兩個詞前只有一個冠詞。例如:

The iron and steel industry is very important to our life. 鋼鐵工業對我們的生活有重要意義。

##### 典型例題

The League secretary and monitor \_\_\_ asked to make a speech at the meeting.

A. is B. was C. are D. were

答案B. 注: 先從時態上考慮。這是過去發生的事情應用過去時, 先排除A., C. 本題易誤選D, 因為The League secretary and monitor 好象是兩個人, 但仔細辨別, monitor 前沒有the, 在英語中, 當一人兼數職時只在第一個職務前加定冠詞。後面的職務用and 相連。這樣本題主語為一個人, 所以應選B。

2. 主謂一致中的靠近原則

1) 當there be 句型的主語是一系列事物時, 謂語應與最鄰近的主語保持一致。例如:

There is a pen, a knife and several books on the desk. 桌上有一支筆、一把小刀和幾本書。

There are twenty boy-students and twenty-three girl-students in the class. 班上有二十個男孩, 二十三個女孩。

2) 當either... or... 與neither... nor, 連接兩個主語時, 謂語動詞與最鄰近的主語保持一致。如果句子是由here, there引導, 而主語又不止一個時, 謂語通常也和最鄰近的主語一致。例如:

Either you or she is to go. 不是你去, 就是她去。

Here is a pen, a few envelopes and some paper for you. 給你筆、信封和紙。

3. 謂語動詞與前面的主語一致

當主語有with, together with, like, except, but, no less than, as well as 等片語成的短語時, 謂語動詞與前面的主語部分一致。例如:

The teacher together with some students is visiting the factory. 教師和一些學生在參觀工廠。

He as well as I wants to go boating. 他和我想去划船。

4. 謂語需用單數的情況

1) 代詞each以及由every, some, no, any等構成的複合代詞作主語時, 或主語中含

有each, every時, 謂語需用單數。例如:

Each of us has a tape-recorder. 我們每人都有答錄機。

There is something wrong with my watch. 我的表壞了。

2) 當主語是一本書或一條格言時, 謂語動詞常用單數。例如:

The Arabian Night is a book known to lovers of English. 《天方夜譚》是英語愛好者熟悉的一本書。

3) 表示金錢, 時間, 價格或度量衡的複合名詞作主語時, 通常把這些名詞看作一個整體, 謂語一般用單數。例如:

Three weeks was allowed for making the necessary preparations. 用三個星期來做準備。

Ten yuan is enough. 十元夠了。

5. 指代意義決定謂語的單複數

1) 代詞what, which, who, none, some, any, more, most, all等詞的單複數由其指代的詞的單複數決定。例如:

All is right. 一切順利。

All are present. 人都到齊了。

2) 集體名詞作主語時, 謂語的數要根據主語的意思來決定。如family, audience, crew, crowd, class, company, committee等詞後, 謂語動詞用複數形式時強調這個集體中的各個成員, 用單數時強調該集體的整體。例如:

His family isn't very large. 他家成員不多。

His family are music lovers. 他家個個都是音樂愛好者。

但集合名詞people, police, cattle, poultry等在任何情況下都用複數形式。例如:

Are there any police around? 附近有員警嗎?

3) 有些名詞, 如variety, number, population, proportion, majority 等有時看作單數, 有時看作複數。例如:

A number of + 名詞複數 + 複數動詞。

The number of + 名詞複數 + 單數動詞。

A number of books have lent out.

The majority of the students like English.

6. 與後接名詞或代詞保持一致的情況

1) 用half of, most of, none of, heaps of, lots of, plenty of 等引起主語時, 謂語動詞通常與of後面的名詞/代詞保持一致。例如:

Most of his money is spent on books. 他大部分的錢化在書上了。

Most of the students are taking an active part in sports. 大部分學生積極參與體育運動。

2) 用a portion of, a series of, a pile of, a panel of 等引起主語時, 謂語動詞通常用單數。例如: A series of accidents has been reported. 媒體報導了一連串的事故。

A pile of logs was set beside the hearth. 爐邊有一堆木柴。

3) 如 many a 或 more than one 所修飾的短語作主語時, 謂語動詞多用單數形式。但由more than... of 作主語時, 動詞應與其後的名詞或代詞保持一致。例如:

Many a person has read the novel. 許多人讀過這本書。

More than 60 percent of the students are from the city. 百分之六十多的學生來自這個城市。

三. 鞏固練習

( C ) 1. The number of people invited \_\_\_\_\_ fifty, but a number of them \_\_\_\_\_ absent for different reasons.

A. were, was

B. was, was

- C. was, were                      D. were, were
- ( A ) 2. E-mail, as well as telephones, \_\_\_\_\_ an important part in daily communication.
- A. is playing                      B. have played  
C. are playing                      D. play
- ( C ) 3. \_\_\_\_\_ of the land in that district \_\_\_\_\_ covered with trees and grass.
- A. Two fifth, is                      B. Two fifth, are  
C. Two fifths, is                      D. Two fifths, are
- ( B ) 4. Ten minutes \_\_\_\_\_ a long time for one who waits.
- A. seem                              B. seems  
C. seemed                              D. are seemed
- ( A ) 5. Eric is the only one of the boys who \_\_\_\_\_ a driving license.
- A. has                                  B. have  
C. is having                              D. are having'
- ( B ) 6. Joy and Sorrow \_\_\_\_\_ next-door neighbours.
- A. is                                  B. are                                  C. were                                  D. be
- ( B ) 7. In my opinion, some of the news \_\_\_\_\_ unbelievable.
- A. are                                  B. is                                  C. has been                                  D. have been
- ( C ) 8. When \_\_\_\_\_ the United Nations founded?
- A. is                                  B. are                                  C. was                                  D. were
- ( B ) 9. Every possible means \_\_\_\_\_ .
- A. has tried                              B. has been tried  
C. was tried                              D. were tried
- ( C ) 10. What she says and does \_\_\_\_\_ nothing to do with me.
- A. was                                  B. were                                  C. has                                  D. have
- ( D ) 11. There \_\_\_\_\_ a dictionary and several books on the desk.
- A. are                                  B. must                                  C. have been                                  D. is
- ( C ) 12. Nobody \_\_\_\_\_ seen the film. It's a pity.
- A. but Tom and Jack have                                  B. except Tom and Jack have  
C. but my friends has                                  D. but I have
- ( B ) 13. No teacher and no student \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. are admitted                              B. is admitted  
C. are admitting                              D. is admitting
- ( D ) 14. All but one \_\_\_\_\_ here just now.
- A. is                                  B. was                                  C. has been                                  D. were
- ( A ) 15. When and where to build the new factory \_\_\_\_\_ yet.
- A. is not decided                              B. are not decided  
C. has not decided                              D. have not decided
- ( A ) 16. The writer and singer \_\_\_\_\_ here.
- A. is                                  B. are                                  C. were                                  D. do
- ( C ) 17. As I have a meeting at four, ten minutes \_\_\_\_\_ all that I can spare to talk with you.
- A. are                                  B. was                                  C. is                                  D. were
- ( C ) 18. In those days John with his classmates \_\_\_\_\_ kept busy preparing for the exam.
- A. is                                  B. are  
C. was                                  D. were

- ( B ) 19. — — \_\_\_\_ your clothes?  
 — — No, mine \_\_\_\_\_ hanging over there.  
 A. Is it, is                      B. Are these, are  
 C. Is it, are                      D. Are these, is
- ( D ) 20. The Smith's family, which \_\_\_\_\_ rather a large one, \_\_\_\_\_ very fond of their old houses.  
 A. were, were                      B. was, was  
 C. were, was                      D. was, were
- ( B ) 21. What the teacher and the students want to say \_\_\_\_\_ that either of the countries \_\_\_\_\_ beautiful.  
 A. are, are                      B. is, is  
 C. are, is                      D. is, are
- ( D ) 22. He is the only one of the students who \_\_\_\_\_ a winner of scholarship for three years.  
 A. is                      B. are  
 C. have been                      D. has been
- ( B ) 23. \_\_\_\_\_ of my brothers are reporters. Covering events, meetings, or sports meetings \_\_\_\_\_ their duty.  
 A. Each, are                      B. Both, is  
 C. Neither, are                      D. None, is
- ( C ) 24. — — What do you think of the \_\_\_\_\_ of the coat?  
 — — It's rather high. You can buy a cheaper one in that shop.  
 A. value      B. cost      C. price      D. use
- ( C ) 25. — — Are the two answers correct?  
 — — No, \_\_\_\_\_ correct.  
 A. no one is                      B. both are not  
 C. neither is                      D. either is not
- ( B ) 26. The wind, together with rain and fog, \_\_\_\_\_ making sailing difficult.  
 A. have been                      B. was  
 C. /                      D/ are

#### 四.答案

1.C 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. A 6. B 7. B 8. C 9. B 10. C 11. D 12. C 13. B 14. D  
 15. A 16. A 17. C 18. C 19. B 20. D 21. B 22. D 23. B 24. C 25. C 26. B

### 第2章 動詞的時態

#### 一. 概念:

時態是英語謂語動詞的一種形式,表示動作發生的時間和所處的狀態.英語中的時態是通過動詞形式本身的變化來實現的.英語有16種時態,但中學階段較常用的有十種:一般現在時,一般過去時,一般將來時,過去將來時,現在進行時,過去進行時,將來進行時,過去完成時,現在完成時和現在完成進行時.

#### 二.相關知識點精講

##### 1.一般現在時的用法

1) 經常性或習慣性的動作,常與表示頻度的時間狀語連用.時間狀語: every..., sometimes, at..., on Sunday. 例如:

I leave home for school at 7 every morning. 每天早上我七點離開家。

2) 客觀真理,客觀存在,科學事實. 例如:

The earth moves around the sun. 地球繞太陽轉動。

Shanghai lies in the east of China. 上海位於中國東部。

3) 表示格言或警句。例如：

Pride goes before a fall. 驕者必敗。

注意：此用法如果出現在賓語從句中，即使主句是過去時，從句謂語也要用一般現在時。

例：Columbus proved that the earth is round. 哥倫布證實了地球是圓的。

4) 現在時刻的狀態、能力、性格、個性。例如：

I don't want so much. 我不要那麼多。

Ann writes good English but does not speak well. 安英語寫得不錯，講的不可不行。

比較：Now I put the sugar in the cup. 把糖放入杯子。

I am doing my homework now. 我正在做功課。

第一句用一般現在時，用於操作演示或指導說明的示範性動作，表示言行的瞬間動作。第二句中的now是進行時的標誌，表示正在進行的動作的客觀狀況，所以後句用一般現在時。

2. 一般過去時的用法

1) 在確定的過去時間裡所發生的動作或存在的狀態。例如：時間狀語有：

yesterday, last week, an hour ago, the other day, in 1982等。例如：

Where did you go just now? 剛才你上哪兒去了？

2) 表示在過去一段時間內，經常性或習慣性的動作。例如：

When I was a child, I often played football in the street. 我是個孩子的時候，常在馬路上踢足球。

Whenever the Browns went during their visit, they were given a warm welcome.

那時，布朗一家無論什麼時候去，都受到熱烈歡迎。

3) 句型：It is time for sb. to do sth "到……時間了" "該……了"。例如：It is time for you to go to bed. 你該睡覺了。

It is time that sb. did sth. "時間已遲了" "早該……了"，例如It is time you went to bed. 你早該睡覺了。

would (had) rather sb. did sth. 表示'寧願某人做某事'。例如：I'd rather you came tomorrow. 還是明天來吧。

4) wish, wonder, think, hope 等用過去時，作試探性的詢問、請求、建議等，而一般過去時表示的動作或狀態都已經成為過去，現已不復存在。例如：I thought you might have some. 我以為你想要一些。

比較：Christine was an invalid all her life. (含義：她已不在人間。)

Christine has been an invalid all her life. (含義：她現在還活著)

Mrs. Darby lived in Kentucky for seven years. (含義：達比太太已不再住在肯塔基州。)

Mrs. Darby has lived in Kentucky for seven years. (含義：現在還住在肯塔基州，有可能指剛離去)

注意：用過去時表示現在，表示委婉語氣。

1) 動詞want, hope, wonder, think, intend 等。例如：

Did you want anything else? 您還要些什麼嗎？

I wondered if you could help me. 能不能幫我一下。

2) 情態動詞 could, would。例如：

Could you lend me your bike? 你的自行車，能借用一些嗎？

3. 一般將來時

1) shall用於第一人稱，常被will所代替。

will 在陳述句中用於各人稱，在徵求意見時常用於第二人稱。例如：

Which paragraph shall I read first? 我先讀哪一段呢？

Will you be at home at seven this evening? 今晚七點回家好嗎？

2) be going to +不定式，表示將來。

a. 主語的意圖，即將做某事。例如：What are you going to do tomorrow? 明天打算作什麼呢？

b. 計畫，安排要發生的事。例如：The play is going to be produced next month. 這齣戲下月開播。

c. 有跡象要發生的事。例如：Look at the dark clouds, there is going to be a storm. 看那烏雲，快要下雨了。

3) be +不定式表將來，按計劃或正式安排將發生的事。例如：

We are to discuss the report next Saturday. 我們下星期六討論這份報告。

4) be about to +不定式，意為馬上做某事。例如：

He is about to leave for Beijing. 他馬上要去北京。

注意：be about to do 不能與tomorrow, next week 等表示明確將來時的時間狀語連用。

4. 一般現在時表將來

1) 下列動詞come, go, arrive, leave, start, begin, return的一般現在時可以表示將來，主要用來表示在時間上已確定或安排好的事情。例如：

The train leaves at six tomorrow morning. 火車明天上午六點開。

When does the bus start? It starts in ten minutes. 汽車什麼時候開？十分鐘後。

2) 以here, there等開始的倒裝句，表示動作正在進行。例如：

Here comes the bus. = The bus is coming. 車來了。

There goes the bell. = The bell is ringing. 鈴響了。

3) 在時間或條件句中。例如：

When Bill comes (不是will come), ask him to wait for me. 比爾來後，讓他等我。

I'll write to you as soon as I arrive there. 我到了那裡，就寫信給你。

4) 在動詞hope, take care that, make sure that等的賓語從句中。例如：

I hope they have a nice time next week. 我希望他們下星期玩得開心。

Make sure that the windows are closed before you leave the room. 離開房間前，務必把窗戶關了。

5. 用現在進行時表示將來

下列動詞come, go, arrive, leave, start, begin, return等現在進行時可以表示將來。例如：

I'm leaving tomorrow. 明天我要走了。

Are you staying here till next week? 你會在這兒呆到下周嗎？

6. 現在完成時

現在完成時用來表示之前已發生或完成的動作或狀態，其結果的影響現在還存在；

也可表示持續到現在的動作或狀態。其構成：have (has) +過去分詞。

7. 比較一般過去時與現在完成時

1) 一般過去時表示過去某時發生的動作或單純敘述過去的事情，強調動作；現在完成時為過去發生的，強調過去的事情對現在的影響，強調的是影響。

2) 一般過去時常與具體的時間狀語連用，而現在完成時通常與模糊的時間狀語連用，或無時間狀語。

\*一般過去時的時間狀語 : yesterday, last week, ...ago, in1980, in October, just now 等, 皆為具體的時間狀語。

\*現在完成時的時間狀語 : for, since, so far, ever, never, just, yet, till/until, up to now, in past years, always等, 皆不確定的時間狀語。

共同的時間狀語 : this morning, tonight, this April, now, already, recently, lately 等。

3)現在完成時可表示持續到現在的動作或狀態, 動詞一般是延續性的, 如live, teach, learn, work, study, know.。

一般過去時常用的非持續性動詞有 come, go, leave, start, die, finish, become, get married等。例如:

I saw this film yesterday. (強調看的動作發生過了)

I have seen this film. (強調對現在的影響, 電影的內容已經知道了)

Why did you get up so early? (強調起床的動作已發生過了)

Who hasn't handed in his paper? (強調有卷子未交, 疑為不公平競爭)

He has been in the League for three years. (在團內的狀態可延續)

He has been a League member for three years. (是團員的狀態可持續)

句子中如有過去時的時間副詞(如yesterday, last, week, in 1960)時, 不能使用現在完成時, 要用過去時。

(錯) Tom has written a letter to his parents last night.

(對) Tom wrote a letter to his parents last night.

#### 8. 用於現在完成時的句型

1) It is the first / second time.... that...結構中的從句部分, 用現在完成時。例如:

It is the first time that I have visited the city. 這是我第一次訪問這城市。

This is the first time (that) I've heard him sing. 這是我第一次聽他唱歌。

注意: It was the third time that the boy had been late.

2) This is +形容詞最高級+that...結構, that 從句要用現在完成時。例如:

This is the best film that I've (ever) seen. 這是我看過的最好的電影。

#### 9. 過去完成時

1) 概念: 表示過去的過去

----|-----|-----|----> 其構成是had +過去分詞構成。

那時以前      那時      現在

2) 用法

a. 在told, said, knew, heard, thought等動詞後的賓語從句。例如:

She said (that) she had never been to Paris. 她告訴我她曾去過巴黎。

b. 狀語從句

在過去不同時間發生的兩個動作中, 發生在先, 用過去完成時; 發生在後, 用一般過去時。例如:

When the police arrived, the thieves had run away. 員警到達時, 小偷們早就跑了。

c. 表示意向的動詞, 如hope, wish, expect, think, intend, mean, suppose等, 用過去完成時表示"原本..., 未能...". 例如:

We had hoped that you would come, but you didn't. 那時我們希望你能來, 但是你沒有來。

3) 過去完成時的時間狀語before, by, until, when, after, once, as soon as。例如:

He said that he had learned some English before. 他說過他以前學過一些英語。

By the time he was twelve, Edison had began to make a living by himself. 到了十二歲那年, 愛迪生開始自己謀生。

Tom was disappointed that most of the guests had left when he arrived at the party.

湯姆失望了，因為他到達晚會時，大部分客人已經走了。

#### 10. 用一般過去時代替過去完成時

1) 兩個動作如按順序發生，又不強調先後，或用then, and, but等連詞時，多用一般過去時。例如：

When she saw the mouse, she screamed. 她看到老鼠，就叫了起來。

My aunt gave me a hat and I lost it. 姑媽給了我一頂帽子，我把它丟了。

2) 兩個動作相繼發生，可用一般過去時；如第一個動作需要若干時間完成，用過去完成時。例如：

When I heard the news, I was very excited.

3) 敘述歷史事實，可不用過去完成時，而只用一般過去時。例如：

Our teacher told us that Columbus discovered America in 1492.

#### 11. 將來完成時

1) 構成will have done

2) 概念

a. 狀態完成：表示某事繼續到將來某一時為止一直有的狀態。例如：

They will have been married for 20 years by then. 到那時他們結婚將有二十年了。

b. 動作完成：表示將來某一時或另一個將來的動作之前，已經完成的動作或獲得的經驗。例如：

You will have reached Shanghai by this time tomorrow. 明天此時，你已經到達上海了

#### 12. 現在進行時

現在進行時的基本用法：

a. 表示現在（指說話人說話時）正在發生的事情。例如：

We are waiting for you. 我們正在等你。

b. 習慣進行：表示長期的或重複性的動作，說話時動作未必正在進行。例如：

Mr. Green is writing another novel. 他在寫另一部小說。（說話時並未在寫，只處於寫作的狀態。）

c. 表示漸變，這樣的動詞有：get, grow, become, turn, run, go, begin等。例如：

The leaves are turning red. 葉子在變紅。

It's getting warmer and warmer. 天越來越熱了。

d. 與always, constantly, forever等詞連用，表示反復發生的動作或持續存在的狀態，往往帶有說話人的主觀色彩。例如：

You are always changing your mind. 你老是改變主意。

#### 13. 過去進行時

1) 概念：表示過去某時正在進行的狀態或動作。

2) 過去進行時的主要用法是描述一件事發生的背景；一個長動作延續的時候，另一個短動作發生。

3) 常用的時間狀語有this morning, the whole morning, all day yesterday, from nine to ten last evening, when, while等。例如：

My brother fell while he was riding his bicycle and hurt himself. 我兄弟騎車時摔了下來，受了傷。

It was raining when they left the station. 他們離開車站時，正下著雨。

When I got to the top of the mountain, the sun was shining. 我到達山頂時，陽光燦爛。

#### 14. 將來進行時



1) 概念:表示將來某時進行的狀態或動作,或按預測將來會發生的事情。例如:  
She'll be coming soon. 她會很快來的。

I'll be meeting him sometime in the future. 將來我一定去見他。

注意:將來進行時不用於表示"意志",不能說 I'll be having a talk with her.

2) 常用的時間狀語有soon, tomorrow, this evening, on Sunday, by this time, tomorrow, in two days, tomorrow evening等。例如: By this time tomorrow, I'll be lying on the beach. 明天此時,我正躺在海灘上呢。

15. 一般現在時代替一般將來時

When, while, before, after, till, once, as soon as, so long as, by the time, if, in case (that), unless, even if, whether, the moment, the minute, the day, the year, immediately等引導的時間狀語從句,條件句中,用一般現在時代替將來時。例如:

He is going to visit her aunt the day he arrives in Beijing. 他一到北京,就去看他姨媽。

16. 一般現在時代替一般過去時

1) "書上說", "報紙上說"等。例如:

The newspaper says that it's going to be cold tomorrow. 報紙上說明天會很冷的。

2) 敘述往事,使其生動。例如:

Napoleon's army now advances and the great battle begins. 拿破崙的軍隊正在向前挺進,大戰開始了

17. 一般現在時代替現在完成時

1) 有些動詞用一般現在時代替完成時,如hear, tell, learn, write, understand, forget, know, find, say, remember等。例如:

I hear (= have heard) he will go to London. 我聽說了他將去倫敦。

I forget (= have forgotten) how old he is. 我忘了他多大了。

2) 用句型 "It is ... since..." 代替 "It has been ... since ..."。例如:

It is (= has been) five years since we last met. 從我們上次見面以來,五年過去了。

18. 一般現在時代替現在進行時。

在Here comes.../There goes...等句型裡,用一般現在時代替現在進行時。例如:

There goes the bell. 鈴響了。

19. 現在進行時代替將來時

1) 表示即將發生的或預定中計畫好的活動。例如:

Are you staying with us this weekend? 和我們一起度週末好嗎?

We are leaving soon. 我們馬上就走。

2) 漸變動詞,如get, run, grow, become, begin以及瞬間動詞die等。例如:

He is dying. 他要死了。

20. 時態一致

1) 如果從句所敘述的為真理或相對不變的事實,則用現在時。例如:

At that time, people did not know that the earth moves. 那時,人們不知道地球是動的。

He told me last week that he is eighteen. 上星期他告訴我他十八歲了。

2) 賓語從句中的,助動詞ought, need, must, dare 的時態是不變的。例如:

He thought that I need not tell you the truth. 他認為我不必告訴你真相。

三.鞏固練習:

1、I'll give the book to him as soon as he \_\_\_\_\_ back.

2、Has the baby \_\_\_\_\_ crying yet? (stop)

3、I don't know whether Mother \_\_\_\_\_ me to Beijing next month.(take)

- 4、She \_\_\_\_\_ on her coat and went out. (put)
- 5、“What are they doing?” “They \_\_\_\_\_ ready for the sports meeting.” (get)
- 6、The boy asked his mother \_\_\_\_\_ him go and play basketball.(let)
- 7、I’m sorry to keep you \_\_\_\_\_ for a long time. (wait)
- 8、It \_\_\_\_\_ (take) him half an hour \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) his homework yesterday.
- 9、If it \_\_\_\_\_ an interesting film, we’ll see it tomorrow. (be)
- 10、They usually \_\_\_\_\_ (do) their homework after supper.
- 11、Listen! Who \_\_\_\_\_(sing) in the next room now?
- 12、\_\_\_\_\_ (be) your parents in Shanghai last year?
- 13、Mr. Yu \_\_\_\_\_(teach) us maths since 1982.
- 14、They will have a trip to the Great Wall if it \_\_\_\_\_ (not rain) tomorrow.
- 15、Li Ming often \_\_\_\_\_ (listen) to the radio in the morning.
- 16、A: “Father, may I go out and play football?” B: “ \_\_\_\_\_you \_\_\_\_\_(do) your homework?”
- 17、All the people in the town are glad \_\_\_\_\_(hear) that a famous musician \_\_\_\_\_ a concert this Saturday evening.( give)
- 18、Our teacher told us if it \_\_\_\_\_(not snow) we would visit the Science Museum the next day.
- 19、They often \_\_\_\_\_ (play) football in the afternoon.
- 20、A: What’re you doing Dad? B: I \_\_\_\_\_ (mend) the radio.
- 21、Let’s \_\_\_\_\_(carry) the boxes to the house.
- 22、Yesterday she \_\_\_\_\_ (want) very much to see the film, but she couldn’t \_\_\_\_\_(get) a ticket.
- 23、I \_\_\_\_\_(write) to you as soon as I get to Shanghai.
- 24、Mike \_\_\_\_\_(visit) several places since he came to Beijing.
- 25、He \_\_\_\_\_ (write) four letters to his wife every month.
- 26、Don’ t make any noise, Grandma \_\_\_\_\_ (sleep).
- 27、His aunt \_\_\_\_\_ (do) some cooking when he came in .
- 28、When they \_\_\_\_\_ (reach) the station, the train had already left.
- 29、There \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a meeting next Monday.
- 30、We \_\_\_\_\_ (know) each other since our boyhood..
- 31、Sometimes my father \_\_\_\_\_ (come) back home late.
- 32、They \_\_\_\_\_ (have) an English evening next week.
- 33、I’m very glad \_\_\_\_\_ (hear) that.
- 34、Wei Fang isn’t here. She \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the reading-room.
- 35、The story \_\_\_\_\_ (happen) long ago.
- 36、They \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) the History Museum last week.
- 37、Zhang Hong \_\_\_\_\_ (make) many friends since she came to Paris.
- 38、She \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the cinema with her classmates tomorrow evening.
- 39、Stay here, bag. Don’t go out. It \_\_\_\_\_(rain) now.
- 40、Li Ping \_\_\_\_\_ (write) a composition every week.
- 41、The scientist \_\_\_\_\_ (give) us a talk yesterday.
- 42、My parents \_\_\_\_\_ (live) in Beijing since 1949.
- 43、Look! The young worker \_\_\_\_\_ (show) the students around the factory now.
- 44、They \_\_\_\_\_ (build) a new bridge over the river next year.
- 45、The students \_\_\_\_\_ (clean) their classroom tomorrow.

- 46、The windows of our lab \_\_\_\_\_ (clean) once a week.  
47、Our teacher \_\_\_\_\_ (join) the party twenty years ago.  
48、The boys \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a basketball match now. Let's \_\_\_\_ (go) and \_\_\_\_\_ (watch).  
49、She \_\_\_\_\_ (work) in this factory for ten years.  
50、“What makes you \_\_\_\_\_ (think) I'm a farmer?” the Frenchman asked.

#### 四.答案

1. comes
2. stopped
3. will take
4. put
5. are getting
6. to let
7. waiting
8. took ... to finish
9. is
10. do
11. is singing
12. Was
13. has taught
14. doesn't rain
15. listens
16. Have ... done
17. to hear ... will give
18. didn't snow
19. play
20. am mending
21. carry
22. wanted , get
23. will write
24. has visited
25. writes
26. is sleeping
27. was doing
28. reached
29. will be
30. have known
31. comes
32. will have
33. to hear
34. has gone
35. happened
36. visited
37. has made
38. will go
39. is raining

- 40. writes
  - 41. gave
  - 42. have lived
  - 43. is showing
  - 44. will build
  - 45. will clean
  - 46. is cleaned
  - 47. joined
  - 48. are having, go ... watch
  - 49. has worked
- think

### 第三章 動詞的語態

#### 一. 概念:

動詞的語態是動詞的一種形式,表示主語和謂語之間語法或語義的關係.英語的語態有兩種:主動語態和被動語態.主動語態用於主動句,表示主語是動作的執行者.被動語態用於被動句,表示主語是動作的承受者.主動語態的構成方式與動詞時態相同,而被動語態由助動詞be+過去分詞構成,有人稱,數,時態的變化.

#### 二. 相關知識點精講

##### 1. let 的用法

1) 當let後只有一個單音節動詞,變被動語態時,可用不帶to的不定式。例如:  
They let the strange go.他們放陌生人走了。

---> The strange was let go.

2) 當let後賓補較長時,let通常不用被動語態,而用allow或permit代替。例如:  
The nurse let me go to see my classmate in the hospital. 那護士讓我去探望住院的同學。

----> I was allowed / permitted to see my classmate in the hospital.

##### 2. 短語動詞的被動語態

短語動詞是一個整體,不可丟掉後面的介詞或副詞。例如:

My sister will be taken care of by Grandma. 我妹妹由奶奶照顧。

Such a thing has never been heard of before. 這樣的事聞所未聞。

3. 表示"據說"或"相信"的片語,基本上由believe, consider, declare, expect, feel, report, say, see, suppose, think, understand等組成。例如:

It is said that... 據說  
It is reported that... 據報導  
It is believed that... 大家相信  
It is hoped that... 大家希望  
It is well known that... 眾所周知  
It is thought that... 大家認為  
It is suggested that... 據建議  
It is taken granted that... 被視為當然  
It has been decided that... 大家決定  
It must be remember that... 務必記住的是

#### 4. 不用被動語態的情況

1) 不及物動詞或不及物動詞短語, 如appear, die disappear, end(vi. 結束), fail, happen, last, lie, remain, sit, spread, stand, break out, come true, fall asleep, keep silence, lose heart, take place等沒有無被動語態。例如:

After the fire, very little remained of my house. 大火過後, 我家燒得所剩無幾。

比較: rise, fall, happen是不及物動詞; raise, seat是及物動詞。

要想正確地使用被動語態, 就須注意哪些動詞是及物的, 哪些是不及物的。特別是一詞多義的動詞往往有兩種用法。解決這一問題唯有在學習過程中多留意積累。

2) 不能用於被動語態的及物動詞或動詞短語, 如fit, have, hold, marry, own, wish, cost, notice, watch agree with, arrive at / in, shake hands with, succeed in, suffer from, happen to, take part in, walk into, belong to等。例如:

This key just fits the lock. 這把鑰匙只配這把鎖。

Your story agrees with what had already been heard. 你說的與我們聽說的一致。

3) 系動詞無被動語態, 如appear, be become, fall, feel, get, grow, keep, look, remain, seem, smell, sound, stay, taste, turn等。例如: It sounds good. 聽上去不錯。

4) 帶同源賓語的及物動詞如die/death, dream/dream, live/life等, 以及反身代詞, 相互代詞, 不能用於被動語態。例如:

She dreamed a bad dream last night. 她昨晚做了個惡夢。

5) 當賓語是不定式時, 很少用於被動語態。例如:

(對) She likes to swim.

(錯) To swim is liked by her.

#### 5. 主動形式表示被動意義

1) wash, clean, cook, iron, look, cut, sell, read, wear, feel, draw, write, sell等。例如:

The book sells well. 這本書銷路好。

This knife cuts easily. 這刀子很好用。

2) blame, let(出租), remain, keep, rent, build等。例如:

I was to blame for the accident. 事故發生了, 我該受指責。

Much work remains. 還有許多活要幹。

3) 在need, require, want, worth(形容詞), deserve後的動名詞必須用主動形式。例如:

The door needs repairing.= The door needs to be repaired. 門該修了。

This book is worth reading. 這本書值得一讀。

4) 特殊結構: make sb. heard / understood(使別人能聽見/理解自己)等。例如:

Explain it clearly and make yourself understood. 解釋清楚些, 讓別人理解你的話。

6. 被動形式表示主動意義, 如 be determined, be pleased, be graduated (from), be prepared (for), be occupied (in), get married 等。例如:

He is graduated from a famous university. 他畢業于一所有名的大學。

注意: 表示同某人結婚, 用 marry sb. 或 get married to sb. 均可。例如:

He married a rich girl. 他與一個富妞結婚了。

He got married to a rich girl.

7. need/want/require/worth

當 need, want, require, be worth 後面接 doing 時, 表示的是被動意義。例如:

Your hair wants cutting. 你的頭髮該理了。

The floor requires washing. 地板需要沖洗。

### 三.鞏固練習

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ (teach) here for ten years since I finished school.
2. Would you mind me \_\_\_\_\_ (use) your bike?
3. The students of Class Two \_\_\_\_\_ (sweep) their classroom now.
4. The Whites \_\_\_\_\_ (not listen) to the radio at that time.
5. It's better to give than \_\_\_\_\_ (receive).
6. How long \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (live) in this town?
7. You \_\_\_\_\_ (come) here last year, \_\_\_\_\_ you?
8. ---When \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (see) him?  
---I \_\_\_\_\_ (see) him last Sunday.
9. She said that the car \_\_\_\_\_ (use) the next week.
10. I didn't know what \_\_\_\_\_ (happen) to China in a century.
11. When I got to the station, the train \_\_\_\_\_ already \_\_\_\_\_ (leave).
12. The stone bridge \_\_\_\_\_ (build) in our hometown for ten years.
13. The desk must \_\_\_\_\_ (clean) once a day.
14. The dog \_\_\_\_\_ (lie) on the floor when I came in..
15. It \_\_\_\_\_ (rain) heavily when I got home.
16. Her mother \_\_\_\_\_ (cook) at this time yesterday.
17. The students \_\_\_\_\_ (do) their homework. \_\_\_\_\_ (not make) any noise!
18. ---- \_\_\_\_\_ you ever \_\_\_\_\_ (be) to Beijing? ----Yes. I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) there last week.
19. He'll telephone us as soon as he \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) there.
20. Jiefang trucks \_\_\_\_\_ (make) in Changchun.
21. A pen is used for \_\_\_\_\_ (write).
22. All that must \_\_\_\_\_ (do).
23. My friend can't decide which pair of trousers \_\_\_\_\_ (choose). So she asked me to go shopping with her.
24. They find it useful \_\_\_\_\_ (learn) English.
25. The old man often \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) the children a story in the evening. This evening he \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) two stories.
26. The radio \_\_\_\_\_ (use) once in a week in our class. It \_\_\_\_\_ (not use) yesterday because there was something wrong with it.
27. Would please tell us how \_\_\_\_\_ (make) the watch \_\_\_\_\_ (work)?
28. She doesn't know what \_\_\_\_\_ (do) and where \_\_\_\_\_ (go).

### 四.答案

1. have taught
2. using
3. are sweeping
4. weren't listening
5. to receive
6. have ... lived
7. came ... didn't
8. did ... see, saw
9. would be used
10. would happen
11. had ... left
12. have been built
13. be cleaned
14. was lying
15. was raining
16. was cooking
17. are doing, Don't make
18. have ... been, went
19. arrives
20. are made
21. writing
22. be done
23. to choose
24. to learn
25. tells, will tell

#### 第四章 動詞的語氣

##### 一. 概念

語氣有三種: 陳述語氣, 祈使語氣和虛擬語氣. 語氣表示說話人對勸詞所示的動作或所處的狀態持有的態度或看法.

##### 二. 相關知識點精講

###### 1. 辨別if 引導真實條件句和if引導的虛擬條件句的區別

If he has time, he will go with us. = Probably he has time and will go with us.

If he had time, he would go with us. = But in fact he has no time.

###### 2. 虛擬條件句中主句和從句的謂與動詞構成形式如下表

if條件句中的謂與動詞	主句的謂與動詞
-------------	---------

與現在的事實相反

1. 行為動詞用did 形式

2. be動詞用were      should

would

could + 動詞原形

might

與過去的事實相反

had + done      should

would

could + have + done

might

與將來的事實相反 1. 行為動詞用did

2. should + 動詞原形

3. were to + 動詞原形                      should

would

could + 動詞原形

might

3.混合時間的虛擬語氣

如果條件句中的動作和主句的動作不是同時發生，主句和從句的謂語動詞的形式應分別根據各自所表示的時間加以調整。

1) If I had received the passport yesterday, I would start today.

2) If he had telephoned me last night, I would see him now.

3) If he had followed the doctor's advice, he would be all right now.

4) If China had not been liberated, the working people would still be leading a miserable life.

4. should/ could / might/ ought to + have done 表示“過去本應該/可以做而實際上卻沒做”

needn't have done 表示“過去沒必要作而實際上做了”

5. 虛擬語氣中的倒裝句

如果虛擬語氣的條件從句謂語動詞中含有were, had, could, should, 有時可將if省去，而將條件從句的主語置於were, had, should, could 之後。

Had you invited us, we would have come to your party.

Were I you, I would do more practice after class.

Could she lend us a helping hand, she would do so.

6. wish 後面的賓語從句的謂語動詞應使用虛擬語氣，表示“可惜...; ....就好了; 悔不該...; 但願...。”

主句謂語              從句謂語

wish    時態    謂語動詞的形式

現在時

表示與wish同時發生 動詞用過去時

be動詞用were

過去時

表示在wish之前發生的動作 動詞用had done

be用had been

將來時

表示在wish之後發生的動作 動詞用would do; should do

be 用 would be ; should be

1) I wish I knew the key to the answer.

2) I wish I were ten years younger.

3) I wish that I had gone to the football match last week.

4) I wish that you had been here yesterday.

5) He wishes that we would visit the old school.

7. 表示命令或建議動詞suggest, insist, propose, desire, demand, request, order, command 後的賓語從句中應使用虛擬 should + 動詞原形; should 不可用would 來替代; 主句所使用的動詞時態不限。

8. suggest 為“建議去做...; 命令...”從句用should + do

為“說明; 暗示”, 從句用過去時或過去完成時。

1) The doctor suggested that I should take the medicine three times a day.



2) The doctor suggested that my grandmother had caught a bad cold.

9. insist “堅持要去做..., 堅持應該去做”, 從句用should + do為“堅持表明, 堅持說/解釋”, 從句用過去時或過去完成時。

10. 虛擬語氣也用於表語從句和主語從句中, 表示間接的命令、要求、請求、建議、決定等, 主句的主語通常是suggestion, proposal, request, order, idea 等。表語從句中的謂語動詞是should + 動詞原型, should 可以省略。

11. 在主語從句中, 當從句用來表示驚奇、不相信、惋惜等, 從句的謂語動詞用需擬語氣形式。其謂語動詞時should + 動詞原型, 或should 省略。

### 三. 鞏固練習

1. If there were no subjunctive mood, English \_\_\_\_\_ much easier.

A. will be  
B. would have been

C. could have been  
D. would be

2. If I \_\_\_\_\_ you, I'd join the army.

A. am  
B. was  
C. were  
D. would be

3. If he \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow, he would find Mr Wang in the office.

A. comes  
B. will come  
C. should come  
D. come

4. If it \_\_\_\_\_ next week, the crops would be saved.

A. rains  
B. will rains  
C. would rain  
D. should rain

5. If I \_\_\_\_\_ it, I would do it in a different way.

A. were to do  
B. do  
C. had done  
D. was to do

6. Supposing the weather \_\_\_\_\_ bad, where would you go?

A. is  
B. will be  
C. were  
D. be

7. If he had worked harder, he \_\_\_\_\_.

A. would succeed  
B. had succeeded  
C. should succeed  
D. would have succeeded

8. If he \_\_\_\_\_, he \_\_\_\_\_ that food.

A. was warned; would not take  
B. had been warned; would not have taken  
C. would be warned; had not taken  
D. would have been warned; had not taken

9. If my lawyer \_\_\_\_\_ here last Saturday, he \_\_\_\_\_ me from going.

A. had been; would have prevented  
B. had been; would prevent  
C. were; would prevent  
D. were; would have prevented

10. If he \_\_\_\_\_ it, he \_\_\_\_\_ it.

A. had seen; could have believed  
B. saw; couldn't believe  
C. saw; couldn't have believed  
D. has seen; had believed

11. —Do you think the thief entered through the window?

—No, if he had, I don't believe, \_\_\_\_\_ broken the living-room's window.

A. he would have  
B. he must have  
C. he had  
D. should he have

12. —Did you go swimming last Sunday?

—No. We would have gone \_\_\_\_\_ nicer.

A. if the weather was

- B. would the weather have been
  - C. had the weather been
  - D. should the weather be
13. \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ for your help, I couldn't have made any progress.
- A. Had; not been
  - B. Should; not been
  - C. Did; not been
  - D. Not; been
14. \_\_\_\_\_ today, he would get there by Friday.
- A. Would have left
  - B. Was he leaving
  - C. Were he to leave
  - D. If he leaves
15. It is ordered that a new bridge \_\_\_\_\_ over the wide river.
- A. should be built
  - B. would built
  - C. will be built
  - D. built

#### 四.答案

1.D 2.C 3.C 4.D 5.A 6.C 7.D 8.B 9.A 10.A 11.D 12.C 13.A 14.C 15.A

### 第5章 助動詞

#### 一.概念:

助動詞是幫助主要動詞構成各種時態,語態,語氣以及否定或疑問結構的動詞.助動詞分為時態助動詞和結構助動詞兩種.

#### 二.相關知識點精講:

##### 1. 助動詞be的用法

1) be + 現在分詞, 構成進行時態。例如:

They are having a meeting. 他們正在開會。

English is becoming more and more important. 英語現在越來越重要。

2) be + 過去分詞, 構成被動語態。例如:

The window was broken by Tom.. 窗戶是湯姆打碎的。

English is taught throughout the world. 世界各地都教英語。

3) be + 動詞不定式, 可表示下列內容:

a. 表示最近、未來的計畫或安排。例如:

He is to go to New York next week.. 他下周要去紐約。

We are to teach the freshmen. 我們要教新生。

說明: 這種用法也可以說成是一種將來時態表達法。

b. 表示命令。例如:

You are to explain this. 對此你要做出解釋。

He is to come to the office this afternoon. 要他今天下午來辦公室。

c. 徵求意見。例如:

How am I to answer him? 我該怎樣答覆他?

Who is to go there? 誰該去那兒呢?

d. 表示相約、商定。例如:

We are to meet at the school gate at seven tomorrow morning. 我們明天早晨7點在校門口集合。

##### 2. 助動詞have的用法

1) have + 過去分詞, 構成完成時態。例如:

He has left for London. 他已去了倫敦。

By the end of last month, they had finished half of their work. 上月末為止, 他們已經完成工作的一半。

2) have + been + 現在分詞, 構成完成進行時。例如:

I have been studying English for ten years. 我一直在學英語，已達十年之久。

3) have + been + 過去分詞，構成完成式被動語態。例如：

English has been taught in China for many years. 中國教英語已經多年。

### 3. 助動詞do的用法

1) 構成一般疑問句。例如：

Do you want to pass the CET? 你想通過大學英語測試嗎？

Did you study German? 你們學過德語嗎？

2) do + not 構成否定句。例如：

I do not want to be criticized. 我不想挨批評。

He doesn't like to study. 他不想學習。

In the past, many students did not know the importance of English.

過去，好多學生不知道英語的重要性。

3) 構成否定祈使句。例如：

Don't go there. 不要去那裡。

Don't be so absent-minded. 不要這麼心不在焉。

說明：構成否定祈使句只用do，不用did和does。

4) 放在動詞原形前，加強該動詞的語氣。例如：

Do come to my birthday party. 一定來參加我的生日宴會。

I did go there. 我確實去那兒了。

I do miss you. 我確實想你。

5) 用於倒裝句。例如：

Never did I hear of such a thing. 我從未聽說過這樣的事情。

Only when we begin our college life do we realize the importance of English. 進了大學以後，我們才認識到英語的重要性。

說明：引導此類倒裝句的副詞有never, seldom, rarely, little, only, so, well等。

6) 用作代動詞。例如：

--- Do you like Beijing? --你喜歡北京嗎？

--- Yes, I do. --是的，喜歡。(do用作代動詞，代替like Beijing.)

He knows how to drive a car, doesn't he? 他知道如何開車，對吧？

### 4. 助動詞shall和will的用法

shall和will作為助動詞可以與動詞原形一起構成一般將來時。例如：

I shall study harder at English. 我將更加努力地學習英語。

He will go to Shanghai. 他要去上海。

說明：在過去的語法中，語法學家說shall用於第一人稱，will只用於第二、第三人稱。現在，尤其是在口語中，will常用於第一人稱，但shall只用於第一人稱，如用於第二、第三人稱，就失去助動詞的意義，已變為情態動詞，試比較：

He shall come. 他必須來。(shall有命令的意味。)

He will come. 他要來。(will只與動詞原形構成一般將來時。)

### 5. 助動詞should, would的用法

1) should無詞義，只是shall的過去形式，與動詞原形構成過去將來時，只用於第一人稱。例如：

I telephoned him yesterday to ask what I should do next week. 我昨天給他打電話，問他我下周幹什麼。

比較："What shall I do next week?" I asked. "我下周幹什麼？"我問道。

可以說，shall變成間接引語時，變成了should。

2) would也無詞義，是will的過去形式，與動詞原形構成過去將來時，用於第二、第三人稱。例如：

He said he would come. 他說他要來。

比較:"I will go," he said. 他說:"我要去那兒。"變成間接引語, 就成了He said he would come. 原來的will變成would, go變成了come。

### 6. 短語動詞

動詞加小品構成的起動詞作用的短語叫短語動詞。例如:

Turn off the radio. 把收音機關上。(turn off是短語動詞)

短語動詞的構成基本有下列幾種:

- 1) 動詞+副詞, 如: black out;
- 2) 動詞+介詞, 如: look into;
- 3) 動詞+副詞+介詞, 如: look forward to. 構成短語動詞的副詞和介詞都統稱為小品詞

### 三.鞏固練習

- 1.If it is fine tomorrow, we \_\_\_\_\_ a football match.  
a. have b. will have c. has d. shall has
- 2.When he was at school, he \_\_\_\_\_ early and take a walk before breakfast.  
a. will rise b. shall rise b. should rise would rise
- 3.In the past 30 years China \_\_\_\_\_ great advances in the socialist revolution and socialist construction.  
a. has made b. have made c. had made d. having made
- 4.I \_\_\_\_\_ go to bed until I \_\_\_\_\_ finished my work.  
a. don't/had b. didn't/have c. didn't/had d. don't/have
- 5.\_\_\_\_\_ you think he \_\_\_\_\_ back by dinner time?  
a. Do/have come b. Did/will have come c. Does/will come d. Do/will have come
- 6.He said that he dropped his bag when he \_\_\_\_\_ for the bus.  
a. was runing b. was running c. were running d. is running
- 7.No sooner \_\_\_\_\_ he arrived home than he \_\_\_\_\_ to start on another journey.  
a. has/was asked b. have/were asked c. had/is asked d. had/was asked
- 8.“\_\_\_\_\_ you give me a room for the night?” I asked on arriving at the hotel.  
a. Should b. Can c. Might d. May
- 9.There are nine of them, so \_\_\_\_\_ get into the car at the same time.  
a. they may not at all b. all they may not c. they can't all d. all they can't
- 10.“We didn't see him at the lecture yesterday.” “He \_\_\_\_\_ it.”  
a. mustn't attend b. cannot have attended  
c. would have not attended d. needn't have attended
- 11.“You realize that you were driving at 100 mph, don't you?”  
“No, officer. I \_\_\_\_\_. This car can't do more than 80.”  
a. didn't need to be b. may not have been c. couldn't have been d. needn't have been
- 12.he was a good runner so he \_\_\_\_\_ escape from the police.  
a. might b. succeeded to c. would d. was able to
- 13.If they \_\_\_\_\_, our plan will fall flat.  
a. are co-operating b. had not co-operated c. won't co-operate d. didn't co-operate
- 14.I hoped \_\_\_\_\_ my letter.  
a. her to answer b. that she would answer c. that she answers d. her answering
- 15.He \_\_\_\_\_ live in the country than in the city.  
a. prefers b. likes to c. had better d. would rather
- 16.\_\_\_\_\_ to see a film with us today?

- a. Did you like b. Would you like c. Will you like d. Have you liked
17. I'm sorry, but I had no alternative. I simply \_\_\_\_\_ what I did.  
a. must do b. had to do c. ought to have done d. have to do
18. "Time is running out, \_\_\_\_\_?"  
a. hadn't we better got start b. hadn't we better get start  
c. hadn't we better get started d. hadn't we better not started
19. No one \_\_\_\_\_ that to his face.  
a. dares say b. dares saying c. dare say d. dare to say
20. The students in the classroom \_\_\_\_\_ not to make so much noise.  
a. need b. ought c. must d. dare
21. You \_\_\_\_\_ last week if you were really serious about your work.  
a. ought to come b. ought to be coming c. ought have come d. ought to have come
22. The elephants ought \_\_\_\_\_ hours ago by the keepers.  
a. to be fed b. to feed c. to being fed d. to have been fed
23. "I wonder why they're late." "They \_\_\_\_\_ the train."  
a. can have missed b. could miss c. may have missed d. might miss
24. "Tom graduated from college at a very young age."  
"He \_\_\_\_\_ have been an outstanding student."  
a. must b. could c. should d. might
25. You \_\_\_\_\_ the examination again since you had already passed it.  
a. needn't have taken b. didn't need to take c. needn't take d. mustn't take
26. He is really incompetent! The letter \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.  
a. should be finished typing b. must be finished typing  
c. must have finished typing c. should have been finished typing
27. The boy told his father that he would rather \_\_\_\_\_ an astronaut.  
a. become b. to become c. becoming d. became
28. When we reached the station, the train had still not arrived; so we \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. needed not to hurry b. needn't have hurried  
c. need not to have hurried d. didn't need to hurry
29. Since your roommate is visiting her family this weekend, \_\_\_\_\_ you like to have dinner with us tonight?  
a. will b. won't c. wouldn't d. do
30. He was afraid what he had done \_\_\_\_\_ a disastrous effect on his career.  
a. might have b. could be c. have been d. shall be

#### 四. 答案

1-10 BDACDBDBC 11-20 CDCBDBBCCB 21-30 DDCABDABCA

### 第六章 情態動詞

#### 一. 概念:

情態動詞是表示能力,義務,必須,猜測等說話人的語氣或情態的動詞。

#### 二. 相關知識點精講:

##### 1. can

##### 1) 表能力

can 表能力時意味著憑體力或腦力或技術等可以無甚阻力地去做某事。

I can climb this pole. 我能爬這根杆子。

He is only four, but he can read. 他只有4歲, 但已認得字了。

Fire can't destroy gold. 火燒不毀金子。

因為can不能和其他助動詞連用，所以表示將來式時用will be able to  
You will be able to skate after you have practiced it two or three times.  
你練習兩三次後就會溜冰了。

## 2)表可能性

多用於否定與疑問結構中，但也可用在肯定句中。

Can the news be true? 這消息可能是真的嗎？

It can't be true. 它不可能是真的。

What can he possibly mean? 他可能是什麼意思？

can 用在肯定句中表示理論上的可能性(一時的可能)。

A horse in the center of London can cost a lot of money.

Attending the ball can be very exciting.

The road can be blocked. 這條路可能會不通的。

may 在肯定句中表示現實的可能性。

The road may be blocked. 這條路可能不通了。

## 3)表示允許(和may意思相近)常見於口語。

Can (May) I come in? 我能進來嗎？

Can I smoke here? 我可以在這裡抽煙嗎？

## 2.could的用法

### 1)表過去的可能和許可, (多用於間接引語中)

At that time we thought the story could not be true.

那時我們認為所說的事不可能是真的。

Father said I could swim in the river.

爸爸說我可以在河裡游泳。

### 2)表過去的能力

I could swim when I was only six.

我剛六歲就能游泳。

Could在肯定句中表示過去的能力時, 常表抽象的一般的能力。

He could be very naughty when he was a child.

他小時候會是很頑皮的。

### 3)表“允許”。可表示委婉客氣的提出問題或陳述看法

Could I use your bike?

Yes, you can.

他會記得那時嗎?

I'm afraid I couldn't give you an answer today.

恐怕我今天不能回答你。

The teacher said you could go to the store for sweets.

老師說你可以去商店買糖。

### 3)Could/can+have done 結構表示對過去發生的事情的“懷疑”或“不肯定”。could 加完成式還用於肯定句時一般表過去可能完成而卻未完成的動作。

Can they have won the basketball match?

他們贏了那場籃球賽嗎？

What you referred to just now can have made her very sad.

你剛剛所談到的可能令他很傷心。

You could have completed the task a little earlier.

你本來能早點完成任務的。(但事實上並沒有提前完成任務)

I could have passed my examination easily but I made too many stupid mistakes.

我本可以輕易通過考試, 但我犯了太多不該犯的錯誤。

如表具體做某一件事的能力時, 則須用 be able to .

He was able to translate the article without a dictionary.

他可以不用詞典翻譯那篇文章。

Can表示一貫的能力, be able to表示客觀能力和通過努力可以達到的能力

I can't swim. But I am sure I will be able to swim through more practicing.

The fire spread through the hotel, but everyone was able to get out

When the boat sank he was able to swim to the bank

3.may 的用法

1)表示請求、可以、允許。

You may drive the tractor. 你可以開那台拖拉機。

2)當回答由may引起的問題時, 否定答語要用must not,表示“不許可”、“不應該”、“不行”。

May I come in?

Yes, you may.

No, you can't

No, you may not .

No ,you mustn't

No ,you'd better not.

3) may /might 推測性用法 可能

He may be right.

He may not come today (可能不)

He may /might come tomorrow.

, 注意: 1只用於肯定和否定句中,不用於疑問句中。

2 might 比may可能性更小

He might get a job.

He may get a job.

3 may no 可能不 can not不可能

He may not come

He can't come

3)表建議(可和as well 連用)

You may (might) as well stay where you are.

你還是原地待著好。(may as well 有“還是……的好”的含義)

4)表祝願

May you be happy!

might

1)表過去的“可能”和“允許”多用於間接引語。

She said that he might take her dictionary.

她說他可以拿她的詞典去用。

除在間接引語中外, might一般不表示過去的“可能”與“許可”。表過去的“可能”可用could, 表過去的“許可”可用were (was) allowed to。

2)表現在的“可能”, 其可能性要比may小。

Electric irons could be dangerous; they might give you a severe shock.

電熨斗會有危險, 它可能電著人。

3)may (might) + have +done 表示對過去發生行為的推測, 含有“想必”、“也許是”的意思。

It may have been true. 這事也許是真的。

He might not have settled the question. 他可能尚未解決那個問題。

4. must 的主要用法。

1) 表示必須、必要

We must do everything step by step. 我們必須按部就班地做一切事情。

Why must you always bother me? 為什麼你偏要打擾我呢。

2) must be + 表語的結構, 通常表示猜測, 含有“一定”之意。(只用在肯定句中)

He must be an honest boy. 他一定是個誠實的男孩。

This must be your room. 這一定是你的房間。

3) must 的否定式有兩個: 當回答由 must 引起的問題時, 否定答覆要用 needn't 或 don't have to 表示“不必”、“無須”、“用不著”、“不一定”的意義。當表示“不應該”、“不許可”、“禁止”時, 就用 must not。

Must I go tomorrow? 明天我必須去嗎?

Yes, please. 是的, 請吧!

No, you needn't. 不, 你不必去。

4) must + have + 過去分詞的結構, 常用在肯定句中, 表示對過去發生行為的推測, 含有“一定”、“准是”的意思。否定和疑問句用 can。

She must have studied English before. 她以前一定學過英語。

5. have to 的含義與 must 是很接近的, 只是 have to 比較強調客觀需要, must 著重說明主觀看法。

I must clean the room. (主觀想法)

I have to clean the room. (客觀需要)

另外, have to 能用於更多時態:

We had to be there at ten. 我們得在十點鐘到那裡。

We will have to reconsider the whole thing.

這一切我們將不得不重新加以考慮。

have to 的否定式: don't have to do 表示“不必做……”之意。

6. ought to 的用法

Ought to 後接動詞原形, 表義務, 但不及 must 那樣具有信心, 如:

You don't look well. You ought to go to see the doctor.

你氣色不好, 應該去看病。

Ought to 用於否定句, 其否定形式可縮略為 oughtn't, 如:

You oughtn't to smoke so much. 你不應該抽這麼多煙。

也可以用於疑問句, 如:

Ought you to smoke so much? 你應該抽這樣多煙嗎?

Ought to 在間接引語中表過去時形式不變, 如:

He said you ought to tell the police.

他說你應該去報告員警。

7. shall 的用法

1) 用於第一人稱徵求對方的意見, 如:

What shall I wear on the journey? 我路上穿什麼好呢?

Shall we dance? 我們跳舞好嗎?

2) shall 用於第二、三人稱時表允諾, 警告, 命令, 威脅(現已少見), 如:

She shall get her share. 她可以得到她的一份。

You shall have it back tomorrow. 你明天可以將它拿回。

情態動詞 should 一般不應被認為是情態動詞 shall 的過去式, 主要用法有:

1) 用於第一人稱疑問句中詢問對方的意願, 但語氣較委婉溫和, 如:

What should we do now? 我們現在該怎麼辦?



2)表示應該、必須, 常與must 換用。例如:

We should (must) master a foreign language at least.

我們應當至少掌握一門外語。

3)“should+be+表語”的結構, 表示推測或驚奇。例如:

They should be back by now. 他們現在應該回來了吧。

I am sorry that she should be so careless. 我感到遺憾她竟會那樣粗心。

4)“should+have+過去分詞”的結構, 表示過去該做而實際上尚未做的動作或行為;

其否定則表示發生了不應該發生的行為。其同義結構“ought to have +過去分詞”,

表示過去“早應該”、“本當”之意, 語氣較強。例如:

I should have thought of that. 這一點我是應當想到的。(但沒想到)

They should not have left so soon. 他們不應當走得這麼早。(但已走了)

5) 在“It is natural (strange, natural, necessary, surprised, impossible, important )

that.....”句型中, 主語從句中的謂語動詞要用should +動詞原形”表示“理所當

然”、“奇怪”、“必要”、“驚異”等的意思。在lest(以免)、for fear (that) (以防)、in case

(以備萬一)等之後也要用should+動詞原形;在advise, suggest, order, demand,

request 等的從句中should+do”例如:

It is necessary that he(should) be sent there at once.

有必要馬上派他到那裡去。

It is strange that he should say so. 他會說這樣的話真是奇怪。

Let us go at once lest we should be late for the train.

我們馬上走吧, 以免趕不上火車。

8..will和would的用法

1)表示意志, 決心或願望。例如:

Surely we will support all the people in the world in their struggle for peace.

我們一定要支援全世界人民爭取和平的鬥爭。

He would not let me try it. 他不肯讓我去試。

2)will表示經常性、習慣性、傾向性, would表示過去的習慣行為。

He will sit there hour after hour looking at the traffic go by.

他會經常一連幾個小時坐在那兒觀看來往的車輛。

He would come to see me when he was in Beijing.

他在北京時, 常來看望我。

3)用於第二人稱作主語的疑問句中, 表示對對方的請求, would的語氣比will委婉

Would/will you kindly tell me the way to the station? 請問到火車站怎麼走?

4)表可能性

This will be the book you are looking for.

這可能就是你要找的書。

She could be about 60 when she died.

他死時大概60歲。

9. need和dare的用法

情態動詞need            實義動詞 need

現    You need (not) do    You (don't) need to do

在

時    He need (not) do    He needs (doesn't need) to do

過

You needed (didn't need) to do

去

時

He needed (didn't need) to do

將 You need (not) do    You will (not) need to do  
來

時 He need (not) do    He will (not) need to do

句型 時態                    動詞

情態動詞dare            實義動詞 dare

肯定句 現在時 dare to 少用            dare/dares to do

過去時 dare to 少用            dared to do

否定句 現在時 daren't/dare not do    do/does not dare (to) do

過去時 dared not do            did not dare (to) do

疑問句 現在時 Dare he do?            Do you/Does he dare (to) do?

過去時 Dared he do?            Did he dare (to) do

needn't have v-ed 表示過去做了某事，但沒有做的必要，意為“本沒必要...”。例如：

You needn't have waken me up; I don't have to go to work today

10.表推測的情態動詞句子的反意疑問句

He must/may be in the room, isn't he?

He can't be in the room, is he ?

He must have finished the work, hasn't he?

He may have done the work last night, didn't he?

:情態動詞+行為動詞進行式

情態動詞+行為動詞進行式(即情態動詞+ be + v-ing形式)，表示推測或評論某動作現在是否正在進行。例如：

1) He must be playing basketball in the room.

2) She may be staying at home.

11.情態動詞+行為動詞完成進行式

情態動詞+行為動詞完成進行式(即情態動詞+ have been + v-ing 形式)，表示推測或評論過去某動作是否正在進行或一直在進行。例如：

1) They should have been meeting to discuss the problem.

2) He may / might have been buying stamps in the post office when you saw him.

12.used to +v, be used to +v-ing和be used to +v

(1) used to +v意為“過去常常”，“過去一直”；be used to +v-ing / n(名詞)意為“習慣於”；be used to +v意為“被用來(做某事)”。

(2) used to只表示過去，而be used to +v-ing / n可表示現在、過去或將來。例如：

1) He used to smoke. Now he doesn't.

2) He's quite used to hard work / working hard.

3) The knife is used to cut bread.

13. 用作情態動詞的其他短語

would rather, would sooner, would (just) as soon, had rather, had better, had sooner, can not but, may (just) as well等可用作情態動詞。例如：

1) The soldier would sooner die than surrender.

2) The brave soldier would as soon die as yield to such an enemy.

3) I'd rather walk than take a bus.

4) If you don't like to swim, you may just as well stay at home.

注：這些短語後一般直接跟動詞原形.would (had) rather, would (had) sooner, would (just) as soon後可跟that 引導的從句，that 常省去，從句要用虛擬語氣。對

現在和將來的假設用過去時，對過去的假設用過去完成時。例如：

1) I would rather you came on Sunday.

2) I would sooner you hadn't asked me to speak yesterday.

### 三. 鞏固練習:

1. \_\_\_\_\_ you ready?

(A) Are (B) Have (C) Will (D) Can

2. \_\_\_\_\_ here early?

(A) Will he (B) Was he (C) Did he be (D) Were he

3. I \_\_\_\_\_ happy about the price of eggs.

(A) am't (B) am not (C) do not (D) won't

4. Since last year I \_\_\_\_\_ him only once.

(A) have seen (B) have been seeing (C) see (D) was seeing

5. Donald \_\_\_\_\_ sixteen tomorrow.

(A) is being (B) going to be (C) shall be (D) will be

6. I \_\_\_\_\_ the story at all.

(A) don't like (B) like (C) am fond of (D) would like

7. I would rather \_\_\_\_\_ than play now.

(A) to study (B) am studying (C) study (D) studied

8. I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ anything about it for the time being.

(A) do (B) didn't do (C) don't (D) didn't

9. The car \_\_\_\_\_ much money.

(A) not cost (B) not have cost (C) isn't cost (D) didn't cost

10. I \_\_\_\_\_ like to eat fish.

(A) am (B) have (C) do (D) be

11. \_\_\_\_\_ repeat the question?

(A) Shall I (B) Will I (C) Would you like that I (D) Do you want that I

12. My teacher knows more than \_\_\_\_\_.

(A) my uncle knows (B) my uncle does

(C) they know (D) they don't know

13. He \_\_\_\_\_ to meet us at the station, but didn't see us.

(A) did go (B) did went (C) goes (D) had

14. Not only \_\_\_\_\_ us light.

(A) does the sun give (B) the sun gives

(C) gives the sun (D) the sun does give

15. \_\_\_\_\_ you tell me what has happened?

(A) May (B) Must (C) Can (D) Could

16. Anne \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.

(A) can sing (B) can to sing (C) is going sing (D) going to sing

17. You \_\_\_\_\_ hand it in at once, you may hand it in tomorrow.

(A) needn't (B) may not (C) can't (D) must not

18. Tell the boy that he \_\_\_\_\_ in the river.

(A) swims (B) swim (C) swimming (D) to swim

19. Joan \_\_\_\_\_ play on Saturday.

(A) going to (B) can (C) is going (D) can to

20. Susan and I can go to the lecture \_\_\_\_\_.

(A) but neither can Charles (B) and so Charles can

(C) but Charles can't (D) and Charles also can

#### 四.答案

1. (A) 2. (B) 3. (B) 4. (A) 5. (D) 6. (A)  
7. (C) 8. (B) 9. (9) 10. (C)  
11. (A) 12. (B) 13. (A) 14. (A) 15. (D) 16. (A)  
17. (A) 18. (B) 19. (B) 20. (C)

#### 第七章 動詞不定式

##### 一.相關知識點精講:

##### 1. 不定式作補語

1) 有些有動詞+賓語+不定式的結構。例如:

advise allow cause challenge command compel  
drive 驅使 enable encourage forbid force impel  
induce instruct invite like/love order permit  
make let have want get warn  
persuade request send tell train urge

例如:

Father will not allow us to play on the street. 父親不讓我們在街上玩耍。

The officer ordered his men to fire. 長官命令士兵開火。

注意:有些動詞如make, have, get, want等可用不定式作做賓補,也可用分詞作賓補。現在分詞表達主動,也表達正在進行,過去分詞表達被動。

2) 有些有動詞+賓語+不定式的結構,不定式的動詞往往是be,不定式一般可以省去。例如:

consider find believe think declare(聲稱) appoint  
guess fancy(設想) guess judge imagine know

例如:

We believe him to be guilty. 我們相信他是有罪的。

We know him to be a fool. 我們知道他是個笨蛋。(to be 不能省去)

##### 典型例題

Charles Babbage is generally considered \_\_\_\_ the first computer.

A. to invent B. inventing C. to have invented D. having invented

答案:C. 一般沒有consider+賓語+be以外不定式的結構,也沒有consider+賓語+doing的結構,排除A、B、D。consider用動詞be以外的不定式作賓補時,一般要求用不定式的完成式,故選C。

3) 有些動詞可以跟there +to be的結構。例如:

believe expect intend like love mean  
prefer want wish understand

例如:

We didn't expect there to be so many people there. 我們沒料到會有那麼多人在那裡。

You wouldn't want there to be another war. 你不至於想讓另外一場戰爭發生吧。

##### 2. 不定式作主語

不定式作主語,往往用it作形式主語,真正的主語不定式放至句子的後面。

例如:It's so nice to hear your voice. 聽到你的聲音真高興。

It's necessary for you to lock the car when you do not use it. 不用車的時候,鎖車是有必要的。

It's very kind of you to help us. 他幫助我們,他真好。

It seemed selfish of him not to give them anything. 他不給他們任何東西，這顯得太自私了。

但是，用不定式作主語的句子中還有一個不定式作表語時，不能用It is... to...的句型。另外，這樣的句子，不能用動名詞作表語。

3. It's for sb.和 It's of sb.

這樣的句子中，由於表語形容詞性質的不同，導致了不定式邏輯主語標誌用for或of的區別。

1) for sb. 句型中的形容詞一般為表示事物的特徵特點，表示客觀形式的形容詞，如easy, hard, difficult, interesting, impossible等：例如：

It's very hard for him to study two languages. 對他來說學兩門外語是很難的。

2) of sb句型中的形容詞一般為表示性格，品德，心智慧力，表示主觀感情或態度的形容詞，如good, kind, nice, clever, foolish, right。例如：

It's very nice of you to help me. 你來幫助我，你真是太好了。

用for還是用of的另一種辨別方法：

用介詞for或of後面的邏輯主語作句子的主語，用介詞前邊的形容詞作表語，造個句子。如果通順用of，不通則用for。例如：

You are nice. (通順，所以應用of)。

He is hard. (非所表達的意思，不通，因此用for。)

4. 不定式作表語

不定式可放在be動詞後面，形成表語。例如：

My work is to clean the room every day. 我的工作每天是清掃房間。

His dream is to be a doctor. 他的夢想是成為一名醫生。

5. 不定式作定語

不定式做定語通常要放在被修飾的詞後，往往表示未發生的動作。例如：

I have a lot of work to do. 我有許多事要做。

There was nothing to bring home that morning. 那天早上(他回家時)兩手空空。

6. 不定式作狀語

1) 目的狀語

常用結構為to do, only to do(僅僅為了), in order to do, so as to do, so(such)... as to...(如此...以便...)。例如：

He ran so fast as to catch the first bus. 他飛快地跑以便趕上第一班車。

I come here only to say good-bye to you. 我來僅僅是向你告別。

2) 作結果狀語，可以表示沒有預料到的或事與願違的結果，不定式要放在句子後面。

I awoke to find my truck gone. 我醒來發現箱子不見了。

He searched the room only to find nothing. 他搜索了房間，沒發現什麼。

3) 表原因

I'm glad to see you. 見到你很高興。

She wept to see the sight. 她一看到這情形就哭了。

4) 表示理由和條件

He must be a fool to say so.

You will do well to speak more carefully.

7. 用作介詞的to

to 可以用作介詞，也可用作不定式的標示。下面的to 都用作介詞：

admit to      object to      be accustomed to      be used to      stick to turn to開始

look forward to      be devoted to   pay attention to      contribute to   apologize  
to      devote oneself to

#### 8. 省去to的動詞不定式

1) 情態動詞(除ought外)後。

2) 使役動詞 let, have, make後, 感官動詞 see, watch, look at, notice, observe, hear, listen to, smell, feel, find 等後。

注意: 被動語態中不能省去to。例如:

I saw him dance. 我看見他跳舞。

=He was seen to dance.

The boss made them work the whole night. 老闆讓他們整夜幹活。

=They were made to work the whole night.

3) would rather, had better句型後

4) Why... / why no...句型後

5) help 後可帶to, 也可不帶to, help sb (to) do sth:

6) but和except後。but前是實義動詞do時, 後面出現的不定式不帶to。

比較: He wants to do nothing but go out. 他只想出去玩。

He wants to believe anything but to take the medicine. 除了吃這藥, 他什麼都信。

7) 由and, or和than連接的兩個不定式, 第二個to可以省去:

8) 通常在discover, imagine, suppose, think等詞後作賓補時, 可以省去to be。例如:

He is supposed (to be) nice. 他應該是個好人。

#### 9. 動詞不定式的否定式

在不定式標誌to前加上not。例如:

Tell him not to shut the window. 讓他別關窗。

She pretended not to see me when I passed by. 我走過的時候, 她假裝沒看見。

#### 10. 不定式的特殊句型too...to...

1) too...to 太...以至於...。例如:

He is too excited to speak. 他太激動了, 說不出話來。

--- Can I help you? 需要我幫忙嗎?

--- Well, I'm afraid the box is too heavy for you to carry it, but thank you all the same.

不用了。這箱子太重, 恐怕你搬不動。謝謝。

2) 如在too前有否定詞, 則整個句子用否定詞表達肯定, too後那個詞表達一種委婉含義, 意為"不太"。例如:

It's never too late to mend. 改過不嫌晚。(諺語)

3) 當too前面有only, all, but時, 意思是: 非常... 等於very。例如:

I'm only too pleased to be able to help you. 能幫助你我非常高興。

He was but too eager to get home. 他非常想回家。

#### 11. 不定式的特殊句型so as to

1) 表示目的; 它的否定式是so as not to do。例如:

Tom kept quiet about the accident so as not to lose his job. 湯姆對事故保持沉默是為了不丟掉他的工作。

Go in quietly so as not to wake the baby. 輕點進去, 別驚醒了嬰兒。

2) 表示結果。例如:

Would you be so kind as to tell me the time? 勞駕, 現在幾點了。

#### 12. 不定式的特殊句型Why not

"Why not +動詞原形"表達向某人提出建議, 翻譯為:"為什麼不.....?" "幹嗎不.....?". 例如:

Why not take a holiday? 幹嗎不去度假?

### 13.不定式的時態和語態

1) 一般式表示的動詞, 有時與謂語動詞表示的動作同時發生, 有時發生在謂語動詞的動作之後, 例如

He seems to know this. 他似乎知道這事。

I hope to see you again. = I hope that I'll see you again. 我希望再見到你。

2) 完成式表示的動作發生在謂語動詞表示的動作之前。例如:

I'm sorry to have given you so much trouble. 很抱歉, 給你添了那麼多的麻煩。

He seems to have caught a cold. 他好像已經得了感冒。

3) 進行式表示動作正在進行, 與謂語動詞表示的動作同時發生。例如:

He seems to be eating something. 他好像正在吃什麼東西。

4) 完成進行式表示動作從過去開始並延續至說話的時候。例如:

She is known to have been working on the problem for many years. 我們知道她研究這問題有好幾年了。

### 14. 動名詞與不定式

1) 動名詞與不定式的區別:

動名詞表達的是: 狀態, 性質, 心境, 抽象, 經常性, 已發生的

不定式表達的是: 目的, 結果, 原因, 具體, 一次性, 將發生的

2) 有些動詞如continue接不定式或動名詞作賓語, 意義基本相同。

3) 有些動詞如continue接不定式或動名詞作賓語, 意義大相徑庭。常見的, 下一節有專門討論

## 第八章 分詞

### 一. 概念:

分詞分為現在分詞和過去分詞兩種, 是一種非謂語動詞形式

### 二. 相關知識點精講:

#### 1. 現在分詞的用法:

1) 做表語:

He was very amusing.

That book was rather boring.

很多動詞的現在分詞都可以作表語:

exciting, interesting, encouraging, disappointing, confusing, touching, puzzling.

2) 作定語:

上面所出現的現在分詞都可以用作定語, 修飾一個名詞:

That must have been a terrifying experience.

I found him a charming person.

現在分詞短語還可以放在名詞的後面修飾名詞, 相當於一個定語從句:

There are a few boys swimming in the river.

There is a car waiting outside.

3) 作狀語:

現在分詞短語可以表示一個同時發生的次要的或伴隨的動作:

Following Tom, we started to climb the mountain.

Opening the drawer, he took out a box.

Taking a key out of his pocket, he opened the door.

現在分詞短語還可以表示原因, 相當於一個原因狀語從句:

Not knowing her address, we couldn't get in touch with her.

Being unemployed, he hasn't got much money.

現在分詞短語還可以表示時間, 相當於一個時間狀語從句:

Hearing the news, they all jumped with joy.

Returning home, he began to do his homework.

Jim hurt his arm while playing tennis.

Be careful when crossing the road.

Having found a hotel, we looked for somewhere to have dinner.

Having finished her work, she went home.

#### 4) 作賓補:

現在分詞在一些動詞之後可以做賓語的補語:

例如, see, hear, catch, find, keep, have 等.

I see him passing my house every day.

I caught him stealing things in that shop.

I smelt something burning.

She kept him working all day.

## 2. 過去分詞的用法:

### 1) 作表語:

We were so bored that we couldn't help yawning.

She felt confused, and even frightened.

They were very pleased with the girl.

I'm satisfied with your answer.

He is not interested in research.

### 2) 作定語:

She has a pleased look on her face.

The teacher gave us a satisfied smile.

cooked food     a written report

fried eggs     boiled water

frozen food     armed forces

required courses     fallen leaves

finished products     a forced smile

the risen sun     new arrived visitors

What's the language spoken in that country?

They're problem left over by history.

The play put on by the teachers was a big success.

Is there anybody injured?

Do you know the number of books ordered?

### 3) 作狀語:

Seen from the hill, the city looks magnificent.

Given good health, I hope to finish the work this year.

They came in, followed by some children.

Depressed, he went to see his elder sister.

When treated with kindness, he was very amiable.

### 4) 作賓補:

過去分詞也同樣可以作賓語的補語, 接在某些動詞後面

I will have the clothes washed tomorrow.

When they get back home, they found the room robbed.



### 三.鞏固練習

1. \_\_\_\_\_ with the best students, I still have a long way to go.  
A. Having compared                      B. To compare  
C. Compared                                D. Compare
- ( ) 2. The music of the film \_\_\_\_\_ by him sounds so \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. playing, exciting                      B. played, excited  
C. playing, excited                        D. played, exciting
- ( ) 3. \_\_\_\_\_ against the coming hurricane, they dared not leave home.  
A. Warned                                    B. Having warned  
C. To warn                                    D. Warn
- ( ) 4. In \_\_\_\_\_ countries, you can't always make yourself \_\_\_\_\_ by speaking English.  
A. English-speaking, understand        B. English-spoken, understand  
C. English-speaking, understood        D. English-speaking, understood
- ( ) 5. After \_\_\_\_\_ the old man, the doctor suggested that he \_\_\_\_\_ a bad cold.  
A. examining, should catch                B. examined, had caught  
C. examining, had caught                D. examined, catch
- ( ) 6. \_\_\_\_\_ , Tom jumped into the river and had a good time in it.  
A. Be a good swimmer                      B. Being a good swimmer  
C. Having been good swimmer            D. To be a good swimmer
- ( ) 7. \_\_\_\_\_ how to read the new words, I often look them up in the dictionary.  
A. Having not known                        B. Not to know  
C. Don't know                                D. Not knowing
- ( ) 8. As his parent, you shouldn't have your child \_\_\_\_\_ such a book.  
A. read                                        B. to read  
C. reading                                      D. be reading
- ( ) 9. He returned from abroad \_\_\_\_\_ that his mother had been badly ill.  
A. heard                                        B. having been heard  
C. having phoned                              D. having been phoned

### 四.答案:

1. C 2. D 3. A 4. C 5. C 6. B 7. D 8. C 9. D

## 第九章 動名詞

### 一. 概念

動名詞由動詞原形+ING構成,是一種非謂語動詞形式

### 二. 相關知識點精講:

#### 1.作主語。例如:

Fighting broke out between the South and the North. 南方與北方開戰了。

#### 2.作賓語

a. 有些動詞可以用動名詞作賓語。例如:

admit 承認    appreciate 感激    avoid 避免    complete 完成    consider 認為

delay 耽誤

deny 否認    detest 討厭    endure 忍受    enjoy 喜歡    escape 逃脫    fancy 想像

finish 完成    imagine 想像    mind 介意    miss 想念    postpone 推遲    practice 訓練

練

recall 回憶    resent 討厭    resume 繼續    resist 抵抗    risk 冒險    suggest 建議

face 面對    include 包括    stand 忍受    understand 理解    forgive 寬恕  
keep 繼續

例如: Would you mind turning down your radio a little, please? 你把收音機音量調小一點, 好嗎

The squirrel was lucky that it just missed being caught. 這松鼠幸運得很, 剛逃避了被逮住的厄運。

b. 有些結構後面可以用動名詞作賓語或其他成分。例如:

admit to    prefer...to    be used to    lead to    devote oneself to    object to  
stick to    no good    no use    be fond of    look forward to    be proud of  
be busy    can't help    be tired of    be capable of    be afraid of    think of  
burst out    keep on    insist on    count on    set about  
put off    be good at    take up    give up    be successful in

3. 作表語, 對主語說明、解釋。例如:

Her job is washing, cleaning and taking care of the children. 她的工作是洗刷、清掃和照顧孩子。

比較: She is washing, cleaning and taking care of the children.

4. 作定語, 一般表示所修飾名詞事物的用途。例如:

a writing desk=a desk for writing 寫字臺

a swimming pool=a pool swimming 游泳池

有些動名詞作定語, 與所修飾的名詞關係比較複雜。例如:

boiling point=a temperature point at which something begins to boil 沸點

a walking tractor=a tractor which a driver can operate while he or she is walking behind it 手扶拖拉機

### 三.鞏固練習

1. I was \_\_\_\_\_ work last week, but I changed my mind.

a. to start    b. to have started    c. to be starting    d. to have been starting

2. I intended \_\_\_\_\_ the matter with you, but I had some guests then.

a. discuss    b. discussing    c. having discussed    d. to have discussed

3. Don't let me catch you \_\_\_\_\_.

a. do that again    b. to do that again    c. doing that again    d. done that again

4. There are many kinds of metals \_\_\_\_\_.

a. each has its special properties    b. one has its special properties  
c. each having its special properties    d. having its special properties

5. It's pay-day, and they're waiting \_\_\_\_\_.

a. for paying    b. to be paid    c. to be paying    d. to have paid

6. \_\_\_\_\_ trouble, I'm going to forget the whole affair.

a. Then rather cause    b. Rather causing  
c. Rather than cause    d. Rather than caused

7. The brilliance of his satires was \_\_\_\_\_ make even his victims laugh.

a. so as to    b. such as to    c. so that    d. such that

8. Children with parents whose guidance is firm, consistent, and rational are inclined \_\_\_\_\_ high levels of self-confidence.

a. possess    b. have possessed    c. to possess    d. possessing

9. The worker is \_\_\_\_\_ in repairing the machine to notice my coming.

a. too busy    b. enough busy    c. busy too    d. busy enough

10. "What did you do in the garden?"  
"I watched my father \_\_\_\_\_ his motorbike."  
a. to repair b. repaired c. repairing d. repairs

#### 四.答案

BDCCBCBCAC

### 第10章 形容詞和副詞

#### 一. 概念

形容詞是用來修飾,描述名詞或代詞的詞,主要用作定語,表語和補足語等.

副詞是用來修飾動詞,形容詞,其他副詞,介詞短語或全句的詞.

#### 二.相關知識點精講

##### 1.形容詞及其用法

1)直接說明事物的性質或特徵的形容詞是性質形容詞,它有級的變化,可以用程度副詞修飾,在句中可作定語、表語和補語。例如:hot。

2)敘述形容詞只能作表語,所以又稱為表語形容詞。這類形容詞沒有級的變化,也不可用程度副詞修飾。大多數以a開頭的形容詞都屬於這一類。例如:afraid 害怕的。

這類詞還有: well, unwell, ill, faint, afraid, alike, alive, alone, asleep, awake 等。

3)形容詞作定語修飾名詞時,要放在名詞的前邊。但是如果形容詞修飾以-thing 為字尾的詞語時,要放在這些詞之後。例如:something nice.

##### 2.以-ly結尾的形容詞

1)大部分形容詞加-ly可構成副詞。但 friendly, deadly, lovely, lonely, likely, lively, ugly, brotherly, 仍為形容詞。

改錯:(錯) She sang lovely.

(錯) He spoke to me very friendly.

(對) Her singing was lovely.

(對) He spoke to me in a very friendly way.

2)有些以-ly 結尾既為形容詞,也為副詞,如daily, weekly, monthly, yearly, early 等。例如:

The Times is a weekly paper.《時代週刊》為週刊。

The Times is published weekly.《時代週刊》每週發行一期。

##### 3.用形容詞表示類別和整體

1)某些形容詞加上定冠詞可以泛指一類人,與謂語動詞的複數連接,如the dead, the living, the rich, the poor, the blind, the hungry等。例如:

The poor are losing hope. 窮人行將失去希望。

2)有關國家和民族的形容詞加上定冠詞指這個民族的整體,與動詞的複數連用,如the British, the English, the French, the Chinese等。例如:

The English have wonderful sense of humor. 英國人頗有幽默感。

##### 4.多個形容詞修飾名詞的順序

多個形容詞修飾名詞時,其順序為:限定詞--數詞--描繪詞--(大小,長短,形狀,新舊,顏色)--出處--材料性質--類別--名詞。例如:

a small round table/ a tall gray building/ a dirty old brown shirt/ a famous German medical school/ an expensive Japanese sports car

2) One day they crossed the \_\_\_\_ bridge behind the palace.

A. old Chinese stone B. Chinese old stone C. old stone Chinese D. Chinese stone old

答案A. 幾個形容詞修飾一個名詞, 他們的排列順序是: 年齡, 形狀, 大小+顏色  
+來源+質地+用途+國家+名詞。

3) --- How was your recent visit to Qingdao?

--- It was great. We visited some friends, and spent the \_\_\_ days at the seaside.

A. few last sunny B. last few sunny C. last sunny few D. few sunny last

#### 5. 副詞的位置

1) 在動詞之前。

2) 在be動詞、助動詞之後。

3) 多個助動詞時, 副詞一般放在第一個助動詞後。

注意:

a. 大多數方式副詞位於句尾, 但賓語過長, 副詞可以提前, 以使句子平衡。例如:

:

We could see very clearly a strange light ahead of us. 我們清楚地看到前面有奇怪的光。

b. 方式副詞well, badly, hard等只放在句尾。例如:

He speaks English well. 他英語說得好。

#### 6. 副詞的排列順序:

1) 時間, 地點副詞, 小單位的在前, 大單位在後。

2) 方式副詞, 短的在前, 長的在後, 並用and或but等連詞連接。例如:

Please write slowly and carefully. 請寫得慢一些, 仔細一些

3) 多個不同副詞排列: 程度+地點+方式+時間副詞。

注意: 副詞very可以修飾形容詞, 但不能修飾動詞。

改錯: (錯) I very like English.

(對) I like English very much.

注意: 副詞enough要放在形容詞的後面, 形容詞enough放在名詞前後都可。例如:

I don't know him well enough. 他我不熟悉。

There is enough food for everyone to eat. 有足夠的食物供每個人吃。

There is food enough for everyone to eat.

#### 7. 兼有兩種形式的副詞

1) close與closely

close意思是"近"; closely意思是"仔細地"。例如:

He is sitting close to me. 他就坐在我邊上。

Watch him closely. 盯著他。

2) late與lately

late意思是"晚"; lately意思是"最近"。例如:

You have come too late. 你來得太晚了。

What have you been doing lately? 近來好嗎?

3) deep與deeply

deep意思是"深", 表示空間深度; deeply時常表示感情上的深度, "深深地"。

例如:

He pushed the stick deep into the mud. 他把棍子深深插進泥裡。

Even father was deeply moved by the film. 老爸也被電影深深打動了。

4) high與highly

high表示空間高度; highly表示程度, 相當於much。例如:

The plane was flying high. 這架飛機飛得很高。

I think highly of your opinion. 你的看法很有道理。

5) wide與widely

wide表示空間寬度; widely意思是"廣泛地", "在許多地方"。例如:

He opened the door wide. 他把門開得大大的。

English is widely used in the world. 英語在世界範圍內廣泛使用。

#### 6) free與freely

free的意思是"免費"; freely的意思是"無限制地"。例如:

You can eat free in my restaurant whenever you like. 無論什麼時候, 我這飯鋪免費對你開放。

You may speak freely; say what you like. 你可以暢所欲言, 想說什麼就說什麼。

#### 8. 形容詞與副詞的比較級

大多數形容詞(性質形容詞)和副詞有比較級和最高級的變化, 即原級、比較級和最高級, 用來表示事物的等級差別。原級即形容詞的原形, 比較級和最高級有規則變化和不規則變化兩種。

##### 1) 規則變化

單音節詞和少數雙音節詞, 加詞尾-er, -est來構成比較級和最高級。

構成法      原級    比較級      最高級

一般單音節詞末尾加-er,-est tall    taller    tallest

以不發音的e結尾的單音詞和少數以-le結尾的雙音節詞只加-r,-st      nice  
nicer    nicest

以一個輔音字母結尾的閉音節單音節詞, 雙寫結尾的輔音字母, 再加-er,-est    big  
bigger    biggest

"以輔音字母+y"結尾的雙音節詞, 改y為i, 再加-er, -est      busy    busier  
busiest

少數以-er,-ow結尾的雙音節詞末尾加-er,-est      clever/narrow cleverer/  
narrower      cleverest/ narrowest

其他雙音節詞和多音節詞, 在前面加more, most來構成比較級和最高級  
important/ easily      more important/ more easily most important/ most easily

##### 2) 不規則變化

原級    比較級      最高級

good    better    best

well(健康的)    worse    worst

bad

ill(有病的)

old    older/elder    oldest/eldest

much/many    more    most

little    less    least

far    farther/further      farthest/furthest

#### 9.as + 形容詞或副詞原級 + as

1) 在否定句或疑問句中可用so... as。例如:

He cannot run so/as fast as you. 他沒你跑得快。

2) 當as... as 中間有名詞時採用以下格式: as + 形容詞+ a + 單數名詞/ as + many/much + 名詞。例如:

This is as good an example as the other is. 這個例子和另外一個一樣好。

I can carry as much paper as you can. 你能搬多少紙, 我也能。

3) 用表示倍數的詞或其他程度副詞做修飾語時, 放在as的前面。例如:

This room is twice as big as that one. 這房間的面積是那間的兩倍。

Your room is the same size as mine. 你的房間和我的一樣大。

4) 倍數+ as + adj. + as <=> 倍數+ the ... + of。例如：

This bridge is three times as long as that one. 這座橋的長度是那座的三倍。

This bridge is three times the length of that one.

Your room is twice as large as mine. 你的房間是我的兩倍大。

Your room is twice the size of mine.

10. 比較級形容詞或副詞 + than。例如：

You are taller than I. 你比我高。

The lights in your room are brighter than those in mine. 你房間的那些燈比我房間裡的亮。

注意：

1) 要避免重複使用比較級。

(錯) He is more cleverer than his brother.

(對) He is more clever than his brother.

(對) He is clever than his brother.

2) 要避免將主語含在比較物件中。

(錯) China is larger than any country in Asia.

(對) China is larger than any other countries in Asia.

3) 要注意對應句型，遵循前後一致的原則。

The population of Shanghai is larger than that of Beijing.

It is easier to make a plan than to carry it out.

4) 要注意定冠詞在比較級中的使用。

比較: Which is larger, Canada or Australia?

Which is the larger country, Canada or Australia?

She is taller than her two sisters.

She is the taller of the two sisters.

11. 可修飾比較級的詞

1) a bit, a little, rather, much, far, by far, many, a lot, lots, a great deal, any, still, even 等。

2) 還可以用表示倍數的詞或度量名詞作修飾語。

3) 以上詞(除by far)外，必須置於比較級形容詞或副詞的前面。

12. many, old 和 far

1) 如果後接名詞時，much more + 不可數名詞，many more + 可數名詞複數。

2) old 有兩種比較級和最高級形式: older/oldest 和 elder/eldest。elder, eldest 只用於兄弟姐妹的長幼關係。例如：

My elder brother is an engineer. 我哥哥是個工程師。

Mary is the eldest of the three sisters. 瑪麗是三姐妹中最大的。

3) far 有兩種比較級，farther, further。一般farther 表示距離，further 表示進一步。例如：

I have nothing further to say. 我沒什麼要說了。

13. the + 最高級 + 比較範圍

1) 形容詞最高級前通常必須用定冠詞 the，副詞最高級前可不用。例如：

The Sahara is the biggest desert in the world. 撒哈拉沙漠是世界上最大的沙漠。

形容詞most前面沒有the，不表示最高級的含義，只表示"非常"。例如：

It is a most important problem. = It is a very important problem. 這是個很重要的問題。

注意：使用最高級要注意將主語包括在比較範圍內。

(錯) Tom is the tallest of his three brothers.

(對) Tom is the tallest of the three brothers.

2) 下列詞可修飾最高級, by far, far, much, mostly, almost。例如:

This hat is nearly / almost the biggest. 這帽子差不多是最大的了。

注意:

a. very可修飾最高級, 但位置與much不同。

This is the very best.

This is much the best.

b. 序數詞通常只修飾最高級。例如:

Africa is the second largest continent. 非洲是第二大洲。

3) 最高級的意義有時可以用比較級表示出來。例如:

Mike is the most intelligent in his class. 馬克是班上最聰明的。

Mike is more intelligent than any other students in his class.

4) "否定詞語+比較級", "否定詞語+ so... as"結構也可以表示最高級含義。例如:

Nothing is so easy as this. 沒比這更簡單的了。

=Nothing is easier than this.

=This is the easiest thing.

14. 和more有關的片語,

1) the more...the more... 越.....就越.....。例如:

The harder you work, the greater progress you'll make. 越努力, 進步越大。

2) more B than A=less A than B 與其說A不如說B。例如:

He is more lazy than slow at his work. = He is less slow than lazy at his work. 他工作時, 與其說是反應慢不如說是懶。

3) no more... than... 與.....一樣....., 不比.....多。例如:

The officials could see no more than the Emperor. 官員們看到的和皇帝一樣多。

no less... than... 與.....一樣.....。例如:

He is no less diligent than you. 他和你一樣勤勉。

4) more than 不只是, 非常。例如:

She is more than kind to us all. 她對我們非常熱心。

三.鞏固練習

1. The modern machine proved \_\_\_\_\_ in heart surgery.

a. high valuable b. highly valuable c. valuable high d. valuable highly

2. Mr. Johnson and his \_\_\_\_\_ daughter do not always understand each other.

a. older b. the oldest c. eldest d. the eldest

3. They \_\_\_\_\_ thought that the truth would be finally discovered.

a. little b. not c. small d. bit

4. They hardly believe that the apartment which costs them \$ 4,000 is \_\_\_\_\_.

a. so small b. such little c. so little d. such small

5. If a claim is kept \_\_\_\_\_, it is more likely to be recognized.

a. live b. lived c. alive d. living

6. On his way to school he met \_\_\_\_\_, so he sent him to hospital.

a. very ill man b. much sick man c. serious ill man d. very sick man

7. She was operated a month ago but now she was \_\_\_\_\_.

a. very good b. very well c. healthy d. good conditioned

8. What I would do is to go \_\_\_\_\_.

a. really quietly somewhere b. somewhere quietly really

c. really quiet somewhere d. somewhere really quiet

9. The chairman asked \_\_\_\_\_ to write their questions on a piece of paper and

send them to the front.

- a. the present members    b. the members presently  
c. the members present    d. the presently members
10. The price was very reasonable; I would gladly have paid \_\_\_\_\_ he asked.  
a. three times much as    b. three times as many as  
c. as three times much as    d. three times as much as
11. The trousers are \_\_\_\_\_, but Tom does not care a bit.  
a. too a little small    b. a little too small    c. a too little small    d. a small too little
12. She wore a dress to the party that was far more attractive than \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. other girls    b. that of other girls    c. the other girls    d. those of other girls
13. he can play tennis better than \_\_\_\_\_ in the class.  
a. any boys    b. any other boy    c. any boy    d. any other
14. Kasia is taking her \_\_\_\_\_ tour of the shops in search of bargains.  
a. daily    b. day    c. day time    d. night
15. \_\_\_\_\_ the child expresses his interest in an activity, the stronger it will become.  
a. The more frequent    b. The frequenter    c. The more frequently    d. the frequentlier
16. We'd better wait \_\_\_\_\_, Peter and Tom will come very soon.  
a. a little longer    b. more longer    c. long    d. as longer
17. although the medicine tastes \_\_\_\_\_, it seems to help my condition.  
a. bad    b. badly    c. too much bad    d. too badly
18. When she got her first month salary, Diana bought herself \_\_\_\_\_ dress.  
a. a cotton, blue ...expensive    b. an expensive ... blue, cotton  
c. a blue, expensive ... cotton    d. a cotton, expensive... blue
19. The doctors have tried \_\_\_\_\_ to save the life of the wounded soldier.  
a. everything possible humanly    b. humanly everything possible  
c. everything humanly possible    d. humanly possible everything
20. I was worried very much because I'll miss my flight if the bus arrives \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. lately    b. late    c. latter    d. more later

#### 四.答案

BCAACDBDCDBDBACAACCB

### 第11章 代詞

#### 一.概念:

代詞是代替名詞的詞,按其意義、特徵及其在句中的作用分為:人稱代詞、物主代詞、指示代詞、反身代詞、相互代詞、疑問代詞、不定代詞和關係代詞等。

#### 二.相關知識點精講

##### 1.人稱代詞

1)人稱代詞的人稱、數和格,如下表所示。

2)人稱代詞有主格和賓格之分。通常主格作主語,賓格作賓語。如:

I like table tennis. (作主語)

Do you know him? (作賓語)

3)人稱代詞還可作表語。作表語時用賓格。如:

---Whos is knocking at the door?

---It's me.



4)人稱代詞在than之後與其他人或事物進行比較時，用主格和賓格都可以。如：

He is older than me.

He is older than I am.

## 2. 物主代詞

1)表示所有關係的代詞叫物主代詞。物主代詞分形容詞性物主代詞和名詞性物主代詞，如下表所示。

2)形容詞性物主代詞的作用相當於形容詞，可在句中作定語。例如：

Our teacher is coming to see us.

This is her pencil-box.

3)名詞性物主代詞的作用相當於名詞，在句中可用作主語、賓語和表語。

Our school is here, and theirs is there. (作主語)

--- Is this English-book yours? (作表語)

--- No. Mine is in my bag.

I've already finished my homework. Have you finished yours? (作賓語)

## 3. 指示代詞

指示代詞包括: this, that, these, those。

1) this和these一般用來指在時間或空間上較近的事物或人，that和those則指時間和空間上較遠的事物或人，例如：

This is a pen and that is a pencil.

We are busy these days.

In those days the workers had a hard time.

2)有時that和those指前面講到過的事物，this和these則是指下麵將要講到的事物，例如：

I had a cold. That's why I didn't come.

What I want to say is this ; pronunciation is very important in learning English.

3)有時為了避免重複提到的名詞，常可用that或those代替，例如：

Television sets made in Beijing are just as good as those made in Shanghai.

4)this在電話用語中代表自己，that則代表對方。例如：

Hello! This is Mary. Is that Jack speaking?

## 4. 反身代詞

英語中用來表示"我自己"，"你自己"，"他自己"，"我們自己"，"你們自己"等意義的代詞稱為反身代詞，也有人稱之為自身代名詞，其形式如表所示。

反身代詞可以在句中作賓語，表語，同位語。

1)作賓語，表示動作的承受者就是動作的發出者，主語和賓語指同一個人或一些人。

He called himself a writer.

Would you please express yourself in English?

2)作表語。

It doesn't matter. I'll be myself soon.

The girl in the news is myself.

3)作主語或賓語的同位語，表示親自或本人。

I myself washed the clothes. (=I washed the clothes myself.) (作主語同位語)

You should ask the teacher himself. (作賓語同位語)

## 5. 不定代詞

不是指明代替任何特定名詞的代詞叫做不定代詞，在句中可作主語、表語、賓語和定語。現將幾個常用的不定代詞舉例說明如下：

### 1) some與any的區別

①some多用於肯定句，表示“一些，幾個”作形容詞時，後面可以接①不可數名詞+單數動詞；②可數名詞+複數動詞。

Look! Some of the students are cleaning the library.

. Some rice in the bag has been sold out.

②any多用於疑問句、條件句和否定句中，表示“一些，任何”用作形容詞時，後面可以接①不可數名詞+單數動詞；②可數名詞+複數動詞。

If you have any questions, please ask me.

There isn't any orange in the bottle.

Have you got any tea?

③any和some也可以作代詞用，表示“一些”。any多用於疑問句或否定句中，some多用於肯定句中。

How many people can you see in the picture?

I can't see any.

If you have no money, I'll lend you some.

注意：與some, any結合的詞如something, somebody, someone, anything, anyone, anybody在肯定句、否定句、疑問句、條件句中的用法，大致和some, any的用法相同。

### 2) few, a few, little, a little在用法上的區別

①用作形容詞：

含義

用法 表示肯定      表示否定

用於可數名詞      a few雖少，但有幾個      few不多，幾乎沒有

用於不可數名詞      a little, 雖少，但有一點      little不多，沒有什麼

I'm going to buy a few apples.

He can speak only a little Chinese.

There is only a little milk in the glass.

He has few friends.

They had little money with them.

②a little和little也可以用作副詞，a little表示“有點，稍微”，little表示“很少”。

I'm a little hungry. (修飾形容詞hungry)

Let him sleep a little. (修飾動詞sleep)

Mary, go a little faster, please. (修飾副詞比較級)

She slept very little last night.

### 3) other, the other, another, others, the others的區別。

用法

代名詞		形容詞	
單數	複數	單數	複數
不定	another		
另一個	others		
別人, 其他人	another (boy)		
另一個(男孩)	other (boys)		
其他男孩			
特定	the other		
另一個	the others		

其餘那些人、物 the other (boy)

另一個男孩 the other (boys)

其餘那些男孩

①other可以作形容詞用，後面可以跟單數或複數名詞，意思是“其他的、別的”。

Where are his other books?

I haven't any other books except this one.

②other也可以用作代詞，與冠詞the連用構成“the other”，表示兩個人或物中的“另一個”。常與one搭配構成“one ..., the other ...”句型。

He has two brothers. One is 10 years old, the other is 5 years old.

She held a ruler in one hand and an exercise-book in the other.

③other作代詞用時，可以有複數“others”，泛指“另外的人或物”。常與some搭配構成“some ..., others ...”句型。

Some went to the cinema, others went swimming.

This coat is too large. Show me some others, please.

④“the others”表示特指某範圍內的“其他的人或物”。

We got home by 4 o'clock, but the others didn't get back until 8 o'clock.

In our class only Tom is English, the others are Chinese.

⑤another可以作形容詞用，修飾後面的名詞，意為“另一個”，還可以跟代詞one。

You can see another ship in the sea, can't you?

Mary doesn't want to buy this skirt. Would you please show her another one?

⑥another也可以作代詞用，表示“另一個”。

I'm still hungry after I've had this cake. Please give me another.

4)every與each的區別。

each every

1)可單獨使用 1)不可單獨使用

2)可做代名詞、形容詞 2)僅作形容詞

3)著重“個別” 3)著重“全體”，毫無例外

4)用於兩者或兩者以上中的每一個人或物 4)用於三者或三者以上每一個人或物

The teacher gave a toy to each child.

Each ball has a different colour.

當我們說each child, each student或each teacher時，我們想到的是一個人的情況。而當我們說every child和every student時，我們想到的是全體的情況，every的意思與all接近，表示他們都如此。

Every student loves the English teacher. = All students love the English teacher.

Every child likes playing. = All children like playing.

5)all和both的用法。

①all指三者以上，或不可數的東西。謂語動詞既可以用單數，也可以用作複數。在句中作主語、表語、賓語、同位語和定語。

All of us like Mr Pope. 我們都喜歡Pope先生。(作主語)

= We all like Mr Pope. (作同位語)

All the water has been used up. (作主語)

That's all for today. (作表語)

Why not eat all (of) the fish? (作賓語)

All the leaders are here. (作定語)

②both作代詞。

a.與其他名詞或代詞並列出現，表示“兩個都”。

Lucy and Lily both agree with us.  
They both passed on their sticks at the same time.  
How are your parents? They're both fine.

b.與“of +代詞(或名詞)”連用,表示“兩者都”。

Both of them came to see Mary.  
Both of the books are very interesting.

c.單獨使用,表示“兩者(都)”。

Michael has two sons. Both are clever.  
I don't know which book is the better, I shall read both.

③both用作形容詞,放在名詞之前,修飾該名詞,表示“兩者都”。

Both his younger sisters are our classmates.  
. There are tall trees on both sides of the street.

### 6. 相互代詞

表示相互關係的代詞叫做相互代詞。相互代詞有each other 和one another兩種形式。在當代英語中,each other和one another沒有什麼區別。相互代詞可在句中作賓語,定語。作定語用時,相互代詞用所有格形式。

We should learn from each other / one another. (作賓語)

Do you often write to each other / one another? (作賓語)

We often borrow each other's / one another's books. (作定語)

The students corrected each other's / one another's mistakes in their homework.  
(作定語)

### 7. 疑問代詞

疑問代詞有who, whom, whose, what和which等。疑問代詞用於特殊疑問句中,一般都放在句首,並在句子中作為某一句子成分。例如:

Who is going to come here tomorrow? (作主語)

What is that? (作表語)

Whose umbrella is this? (作定語)

Whom are you waiting for? (作賓語)

### 8. 關係代詞

關係代詞是一種引導從句並起連接主句和從句作用的代詞。關係代詞有 who, whose, whom, that, which. 它們在句中可用作主語,表語,賓語,定語. 在主句中,它們還代表著從句所修飾的那個名詞或代詞。例如:

I hate people who talk much but do little.

I'm looking at the photograph which you sent me with your letter.

With the money that he had saved, he went on with his studies.

Do you know the lady who is interviewing our headmaster?

### 三.鞏固練習

1. Tom, Please pass \_\_\_\_\_ the glasses. I want to read the newspapers.

A. you B. me C. him D. her

2. The English novel is quite easy for you. There are \_\_\_\_\_ new words in it.

A. a little B. little C. a few D. few

3. ---You want \_\_\_\_\_ sandwich?

---Yes, I usually eat a lot when I'm hungry.

A. other B. another C. others D. the other

4. The doctors and nurses are doing their best to fight SARS. They think more of others than \_\_\_\_\_.

A. they B. them C. themselves D. theirs

5. ---Which do you prefer, a bottle of orange or a bottle of milk?  
 ---\_\_\_\_\_, thanks. I'd like a cup of tea.  
 A. Either B. Neither C. Both D. None
6. ---Oh! I came in a hurry and forgot to bring food.  
 ---Never mind. You can have \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. us B. ours C. you D. yours
7. ---Can I come this evening or tomorrow morning?  
 ---\_\_\_\_\_ is OK. I'm free today and tomorrow.  
 A. Either B. Neither C. Both D. None
8. ---How are you going to improve \_\_\_\_\_ this term?  
 ---Work harder than last term.  
 A. ourselves B. myself C. himself D. yourself
9. ---Could you tell me \_\_\_\_\_ she is looking for?  
 ---Her cousin, Susan.  
 A. that B. whose C. who D. which
10. ---Is \_\_\_\_\_ here?  
 ---No. Li Lei and Han Mei have asked for leave.  
 A. everybody B. somebody C. anybody D. nobody
11. Paul has \_\_\_\_\_ friends except me, and sometimes he feels lonely.  
 A. many B. some C. few D. more
12. If you want to book a round-trip ticket, you'll have to pay \_\_\_\_\_ \$ 30.  
 A. more B. other C. the other D. another
13. ---Do you live by yourself, Mr Wang?  
 ---Yes. I have two sons. But \_\_\_\_\_ of them lives with me. They are now studying in America?  
 A. neither B. both C. none D. either
14. ---Have you sent your parents an E-mail telling them you arrived safe?  
 ---No. \_\_\_\_\_ of them can use a computer.  
 A. None B. Both C. Neither D. All
15. Who taught \_\_\_\_\_ English last term? Was \_\_\_\_\_ Mr. Smith?  
 A. you; it B. you; he C. your; it D. your; that
16. ---That woman has a bag in her right hand. What's in her \_\_\_\_\_ hand?  
 A. another B. other C. one D. the other
17. We decided to go for a field trip with some friends of \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. us B. our C. ours D. ourselves
18. ---Is there a bus to the zoo?  
 ---I'm afraid there's \_\_\_\_\_ bus to the zoo.  
 A. no B. any C. some D. none
19. You forgot your dictionary? You may have \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. me B. my C. mine D. myself
20. This is \_\_\_\_\_ classroom. Where is \_\_\_\_\_?  
 A. our; them B. us; they C. our; theirs D. ours; theirs

#### 四.答案

1.B 2.D 3.B 4.C 5.B 6.B 7.A 8.D 9.C 10.A 11.C 12.D 13.A 14.C 15.A 16.B 17.C 18.A 19.C 20.C

#### 第12章 名詞

## 一.概念

名詞是表示人,事物,地點或抽象概念的名稱的詞,有專有名詞和普通名詞之分,還有可數名詞與不可數名詞之分.

## 二.相關知識點精講

### 1.名詞複數的規則變化

情況 構成方法 讀音 例詞

一般情況 加 -s 清輔音後讀/s/ map-maps

濁輔音和母音後讀 /z/ bag-bags /car-cars

以s, sh, ch, x等結尾 加 -es 讀 /iz/ bus-buses/ watch-watches

以ce, se, ze,等結尾 加 -s 讀 /iz/ license-licenses

以輔音字母+y結尾 變y為i再加es 讀 /z/ baby---babies

### 2.其它名詞複數的規則變化

1) 以y結尾的專有名詞, 或母音字母+y 結尾的名詞變複數時, 直接加s變複數。例如:

two Marys                      the Henrys  
monkey---monkeys              holiday---holidays

2) 以o 結尾的名詞, 變複數時:

a. 加s, 如: photo---photos              piano---pianos  
radio---radios                      zoo---zoos;

b. 加es, 如: potato--potatoes              tomato--tomatoes

c. 上述a和b兩種方法均可, 如zero---zeros / zeroes。

3) 以f或fe 結尾的名詞變複數時:

a. 加s, 如: belief---beliefs              roof---roofs  
safe---safes                      gulf---gulfs;

b. 去f,fe 加ves, 如: half---halves

knife---knives    leaf---leaves              wolf---wolves  
wife---wives    life---lives              thief---thieves;

c. 上述a和b兩種方法均可, 如handkerchief: handkerchiefs / handkerchieves。

### 3.名詞複數的不規則變化

1) child---children    foot---feet    tooth---teeth  
mouse---mice    man---men    woman---women

注意: 由一個詞加 man 或 woman構成的合成詞, 其複數形式也是 -men 和 -women, 如an Englishman, two Englishmen。但German不是合成詞, 故複數形式為Germans; Bowman是姓, 其複數是the Bowmans。

2) 單複同形, 如deer, sheep, fish, Chinese, Japanese, li, jin, yuan, two li, three mu, four jin等。但除人民幣的元、角、分外, 美元、英鎊、法郎等都有複數形式。如: a dollar, two dollars; a meter, two meters。

3) 集體名詞, 以單數形式出現, 但實為複數。例如:

people police cattle 等本身就是複數, 不能說 a people, a police, a cattle, 但可以說a person, a policeman, a head of cattle, the English, the British, the French, the Chinese, the Japanese, the Swiss 等名詞, 表示國民總稱時, 作複數用, 如The Chinese are industries and brave. 中國人民是勤勞勇敢的。

4) 以s結尾, 仍為單數的名詞, 如:

a. maths, politics, physics等學科名詞, 一般是不可數名詞, 為單數。

b. news 為不可數名詞。

c. the United States, the United Nations 應視為單數。

The United Nations was organized in 1945. 聯合國是1945年組建起來的。

d. 以複數形式出現的書名, 劇名, 報紙, 雜誌名, 也可視為單數。例如:  
"The Arabian Nights" is a very interesting story-book. 《一千零一夜》是一本非常有趣的故事書。

5) 表示由兩部分構成的東西, 如: glasses (眼鏡) trousers, clothes等, 若表達具體數目, 要借助數量詞 pair(對, 雙); suit(套); a pair of glasses; two pairs of trousers等。

6) 另外還有一些名詞, 其複數形式有時可表示特別意思, 如: goods貨物, waters水域, fishes(各種)魚。

#### 4. 不可數名詞量的表示

##### 1) 物質名詞

a. 當物質名詞轉化為個體名詞時為可數。

比較: Cake is a kind of food. 蛋糕是一種食物。(不可數)

These cakes are sweet. 這些蛋糕很好吃。(可數)

b. 當物質名詞表示該物質的種類時, 可數。例如:

This factory produces steel. (不可數)

We need various steels. (可數)

c. 當物質名詞表示份數時, 可數。例如:

Our country is famous for tea. 我國因茶葉而聞名。

Two teas, please. 請來兩杯茶。

2) 抽象名詞表示具體的事例時也可數。例如:

four freedoms 四大自由 the four modernizations 四個現代化

物質名詞和抽象名詞可以借助單位詞表一定的數量, 如 a glass of water 一杯水/ a piece of advice 一則建議。

#### 5. 定語名詞的複數

名詞作定語一般用單數, 但也有以下例外。

1) 用複數作定語。例如:

sports meeting 運動會 students reading-room 學生閱覽室

talks table 談判桌 the foreign languages department 外語系

2) man, woman, gentleman等作定語時, 其單複數以所修飾的名詞的單複數而定。例如:

men workers women teachers gentlemen officials

3) 有些原有s結尾的名詞, 作定語時, s保留。例如:

goods train (貨車) arms produce 武器生產

customs papers 海關文件 clothes brush 衣刷

4) 數詞+名詞作定語時, 這個名詞一般保留單數形式。例如:

two-dozen eggs 兩打雞蛋 a ten-mile walk 十英里路

two-hundred trees 兩百棵樹 a five-year plan. 一個五年計劃

#### 6. 不同國籍人的單複數

國籍 總稱(謂語用複數) 單數 複數

中國人 the Chinese a Chinese two Chinese

瑞士人 the Swiss a Swiss two Swiss

澳大利亞人 the Australians an Australian two Australians

俄國人 the Russians a Russian two Russians

義大利人 the Italians an Italian two Italians

希臘人 the Greek a Greek two Greeks

法國人 the French a Frenchman two Frenchmen

日本人 the Japanese a Japanese two Japanese

美國人	the Americans	an American	two Americans
印度人	the Indians	an Indian	two Indians
加拿大人	the Canadians	a Canadian	two Canadians
德國人	the Germans	a Germans	two Germans
英國人	the English	an Englishman	two Englishmen
瑞典人	the Swedish	a Swede	two Swedes

### 7. 名詞的格

英語中有些名詞可以加"'s"來表示所有關係，帶這種詞尾的名詞形式稱為該名詞的所有格，如：a teacher's book。名詞所有格的規則如下：

- 1) 單數名詞詞尾加"'s"，複數名詞詞尾沒有s，也要加"'s"，如the boy's bag 男孩的書包，men's room 男廁所。
- 2) 若名詞已有複數詞尾-s，只加"'", 如：the workers' struggle 工人的鬥爭。
- 3) 凡不能加"'s"的名詞，都可以用"名詞+of +名詞"的結構來表示所有關係，如：the title of the song 歌的名字。

4) 在表示店鋪或教堂的名字或某人的家時，名詞所有格的後面常常不出現它所修飾的名詞，如：the barber's 理髮店。

5) 如果兩個名詞並列，並且分別有's，則表示"分別有"；只有一個's，則表示'共有'。例如：

John's and Mary's rooms(兩間) John and Mary's room(一間)

6) 複合名詞或短語，'s 加在最後一個詞的詞尾。例如：a month or two's absence

### 三.鞏固練習

1.He was eager to make some extra money, since during these years he could hardly live on his\_\_\_\_\_.

a. little wage b. few wage c. wage d. wages

2.Most of the houses in the village were burnt to \_\_\_\_\_ during the war.

a. an ash b. the ash c. ash d. ashes

3.The students at colleges or universities are making \_\_\_\_\_ for the coming New Year.

a. many preparations b. much preparation c. preparations d. preparation

4.Painting in \_\_\_\_\_ is one of their spare-time activities.

a. oil b. an oil c. oils d. the oil

5.In the view of the foreign experts, there wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ oil here.

a. much b. lots of c. a great deal of d. many

6.The large houses are being painted, but \_\_\_\_\_.

a. of great expense b. at a great expense c. in a lot of expenses d. by high expense

7.The room was small and contained far too \_\_\_\_\_.

a.much new furniture c. much new furnitures

b.many new furniture d. many new furnitures

8.Jim was late for two classes this morning. He said that he forgot both of the \_\_\_\_\_.

a. rooms number b. room number c. room's numbers d. room numbers

9.Computers can do \_\_\_\_\_ work in a short time, but a man can not do \_\_\_\_\_ by himself.

a.great many...many c. much...a great deal

b.great deal of...much d. many...a great many

10.She didn't know \_\_\_\_\_ he had been given.



- a. how many information    c. how many informations  
 b. the number of information    d. how much information
11. He invited all of his \_\_\_\_\_ to join his wedding party.  
 a. comrade-in-arms            c. comrades-in-arm  
 b. comrades-in-arms            d. comrade-in-arm
12. All the \_\_\_\_\_ in the hospital got a rise last month.  
 a. women doctors            c. woman doctors  
 b. women doctor            d. woman doctor
13. After ten years, all these youngsters became \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. grows-ups            c. grows-up  
 b. grown-up            d. grown-ups
14. The police investigated those \_\_\_\_\_ about the accident.  
 a. stander-by            c. standers-by  
 b. stander-bys            d. standers-bys
15. The Nazi kept those \_\_\_\_\_ in their concentration camp.  
 a. prisoner-of-wars            c. prisoners-of-war  
 b. prisoners-of-wars            d. prisoner-of-war
16. The manager was greatly appreciate that \_\_\_\_\_ made by Linda lately.  
 a. new reel    b. news reel    c. new-reels    d. news reels
17. Mary's dress is similar in appearance to her \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. elder sister    b. elder sister's    c. elder sisters    d. elder sisters dress
18. All the people at the conference are \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. mathematic teachers    c. mathematics teacher  
 b. mathematics teachers    d. mathematic's teachers
19. Professor Mackay told us that \_\_\_\_\_ of lead are its softness and its resistance.  
 a. some property    c. properties  
 b. some properties    d. property
20. Physics \_\_\_\_\_ with matter and motion.  
 a. deal    b. deals    c. dealing    d. are

#### 四.答案

DDCCACADCDADB BBBCCB

### 第13章 數詞

#### 一.概念:

數詞分兩類:基數詞和序數詞.表示數目的詞叫基數詞,表示須序的詞叫序數詞.

#### 二.相關知識點精講

##### 1.基數詞

1) 基數詞一般可寫成如345或three hundred and forty-five。

2) 基數詞一般是單數形式, 但遇下列情況, 常用複數:

a. 與of 短語連用, 表示概數, 不能與具體數目連用, 如scores of people 指許多人;

b. 在一些表示"一排"或"一組"的片語裡。例如:

They arrived in twos and threes. 他們三三兩兩的到了。

c. 表示"幾十歲"。

d. 表示"年代", 用 in +the +數詞複數。

e. 在乘法運算的一種標記法裡, 如Three fives is (are) fifteen。

##### 2.序數詞

序數詞的縮寫形式如first---1st second---2nd thirty-first---31st等。

### 3. 數詞的用法

#### 1) 倍數標記法

a. 主語+謂語+倍數(或分數)+ as + adj. + as。例如

I have three times as many as you. 我有你三倍那麼多。

b. 主語+謂語+倍數(分數)+ the size (amount, length...) of...。例如:

The earth is 49 times the size of the moon. 地球是月球的49倍。

c. 主語+謂語+倍數(分數)+ 形容詞(副詞)比較級+ than...。例如:

The grain output is 8 percent higher this year than that of last year. 今年比去年糧食產量增加8%。

d. 還可以用by+倍數, 表示增加多少倍。例如:

The production of grain has been increased by four times this year. 今年糧食產量增加了4倍。

2) 分數標記法的構成: 基數詞代表分子, 序數詞代表分母。分子大於1時, 分子的序數詞用單數, 分母序數詞用複數。例如:

1/3 one-third; 3/37 three and three-sevenths.

### 三. 鞏固練習

1. \_\_\_\_\_ martyrs have heroically laid down their lives for the people.

a. Thousand upon thousand of    b. Thousand and thousands of

c. Thousands upon thousands of    d. Thousand and thousand of

2. They received \_\_\_\_\_ of letters about their TV programs.

a. dozen    b. dozen and dozen    c. score    d. dozens

3. Who is that man, \_\_\_\_\_ in the front row?

a. one    b. the one    c. first    d. the first

4. We have produced \_\_\_\_\_ this year as we did in 1993.

a. as much cotton twice    b. as twice much cotton

c. much as twice cotton    d. twice as much cotton

5. The earth is about \_\_\_\_\_ as the moon.

a. as fifty time big    b. fifty times as big    c. as big fifty time    d. fifty as times big

6. The population of many Alaskan cities has \_\_\_\_\_ in the past three years.

a. more than doubled    b. more doubled than    c. much than doubled    d. much doubled than

7. The moon is about \_\_\_\_\_ in diameter as diameter as the earth.

a. one-three as large    b. one three as large    c. one-third as large    d. one third as large

8. Five hundred yuan a month \_\_\_\_\_ enough to live on.

a. is    b. are    c. is being    d. has been

9. \_\_\_\_\_ of the buildings were ruined.

a. Three fourth    b. Three four    c. Three-fourths    d. Three-four

10. Consult \_\_\_\_\_ for questions about earthquakes.

a. the six index    b. index six    c. sixth index    d. index numbering six

### 四. 答案

CDDDBACACB

## 第14章 冠詞

### 一. 概念

冠詞是一個虛詞, 它置於名詞之前, 限定名詞的意義。冠詞可分為定冠詞, 不定冠詞和零冠詞三類。

## 二.相關知識點精講

1. a用於輔音發音開頭的詞前, 如 : a book; an用於母音發音開頭的詞前, 如 : an apple, an hour. 請區別 : a useful machine, an umbrella, a “u”, an “h”。
2. 指上文提到過的人或物, 用定冠詞the。
3. 在世界上獨一無二的事物前用定冠詞the. 如 : the sun, the moon, the earth。
4. the用於序數詞, 表方位的名詞和形容詞最高級前。the first, the best, in the south。
5. 在複數姓氏前加the, 表示xx一家人, 常看成複數。如 : the Browns。
6. 在介詞短語中常用定冠詞the, 如 : in the box, behind the chair。
7. 不能用定冠詞the的幾個方面 : (1)在節日、星期、月份、季節、年等詞前不用冠詞。如 : in summer, in August 請區別 : in the spring of 1945. (這裡表示特指, 故加the)(2)一日三餐和球類運動名不用冠詞。如 : have breakfast, play football (3)一些固定片語中, 如 : go to bed, go to school, by bus, at night。
8. 在有些片語中, 有冠詞和無冠詞意思不同, 請注意區別 :  
in front of 在...前面, in the front of 在...範圍內的前部  
in hospital (生病)住院, in the hospital 在醫院裡。

## 三.鞏固練習

1. When Linda was a child, her mother always let her have \_\_\_\_\_ bed.  
a. the breakfast in b. the breakfast in the c. breakfast in d. breakfast in the
2. He has promised to give up \_\_\_\_\_ hundreds of times.  
a. tobacco b. tobacco c. the tobacco d. tobaccos
3. \_\_\_\_\_ usually go to church every Sunday.  
a. The Brown b. A Brown c. Browns d. The Browns
4. The train is running fifty miles \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. an hour b. one hour c. the hour d. a hour
5. He can play almost every kind of music instrument but he is good \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. at the flute b. at flute c. at a flute d. at that flute
6. The investigators found that more should be done for \_\_\_\_\_ in India.  
a. those poor b. a poor c. poor d. the poor
7. You look in high spirit. You must have \_\_\_\_\_ during your holiday.  
a. wonderful time b. a wonderful time c. the wonderful time d. some wonderful time
8. The city assigned a policeman to the school crossing because \_\_\_\_\_ traffic there was so heavy.  
a. a b. an c. the d. one
9. A new teacher was sent to the village in place of \_\_\_\_\_ one who had retired.  
a. a b. the c. an d. its
10. Virtue and vice are before you; \_\_\_\_\_ leads you to happiness, \_\_\_\_\_ to misery.  
a. the former...latter b. a former...a latter  
c. the former...the latter d. former...latter

## 四.答案

CBDAADBCBC

## 第15章 介詞

### 一.概念:

介詞表示它後面的名詞或相當於名詞的其他結構與句中其他成分的關係。

### 二.相關知識點精講

## 1.表示地點位置的介詞

1)at ,in, on, to

at (1)表示在小地方;(2)表示“在……附近, 旁邊”

in (1)表示在大地方;(2)表示“在...範圍之內”。

on 表示毗鄰, 接壤

to 表示在……範圍外, 不強調是否接壤

He arrived at the station at ten.

He is sitting at the desk.

He arrived in Shanghai yesterday.

Jiangsu lies in the east of China.

Russia lies on the north of China.

Fujian is to the south of Jiangsu Province.

2)above, over, on 在……上

above 指在……上方,不強調是否垂直, 與 below相對;

over指垂直的上方,與under相對,但over與物體有一定的空間, 不直接接觸。

on表示某物體上面並與之接觸。

The bird is flying above my head.

There is a bridge over the river.

He put his watch on the desk.

3)below, under 在……下

under表示在...正下方

below表示在……下, 不一定在正下方

There is a cat under the table.

Please write your name below the line.

## 2.表示時間的介詞

1)in , on, at 在……時

in表示較長時間, 如世紀、朝代、時代、年、季節、月及一般(非特指)的早、中、晚等。

如 in the 20th century, in the 1950s, in 1989, in summer, in January, in the morning, in the night, in one's life , in one's thirties等。

on表示具體某一天及其早、中、晚。

如on May 1st, on Monday, on New Year's Day, on a cold night in January, on a fine morning, on Sunday afternoon等。

at表示某一時刻或較短暫的時間, 或泛指耶誕節, 復活節等。

如at 3:20, at this time of year, at the beginning of, at the end of ..., at the age of ..., at Christmas, at night, at noon, at this moment等。

注意: 在last, next, this, that, some, every 等詞之前一律不用介詞。如: We meet every day.

2)in, after 在……之後

“in +段時間”表示將來的一段時間以後;

“after+段時間”表示過去的一段時間以後;

“after+將來點時間”表示將來的某一時刻以後。

My mother will come back in three or four days.

He arrived after five months.

She will appear after five o'clock this afternoon.

3)from, since 自從……

from僅說明什麼時候開始, 不說明某動作或情況持續多久;

since表示某動作或情況持續至說話時刻，通常與完成時連用。

He studied the piano from the age of three.

They have lived here since 1978.

4)after, behind 在.....之後

after主要用於表示時間；

behind主要用於表示位置。

We shall leave after lunch.

Lucy is hiding behind an old house.

3.表運動方向的介詞: across, through 通過, 穿過

across表示橫過,即從物體表面通過, 與on有關；

through穿過,即從物體內部穿過, 與in有關。

She swam across the river.

He walked through the forest.

4.表示“在.....之間”的介詞: between, among

between指在兩個人或兩個事物之間；

among指在三個或三個以上的人或事物之間。

There is a football match between Class One and Class Two on the playground.

The teacher is standing among the students.

5.表示其他意義的介詞

1)on, about 關於

on 表示這本書, 這篇文章或演說是嚴肅的, 或學術性的, 可供專門研究這一問題的人閱讀；

about表示內容較為普通, 不那麼正式。

There will be a lecture on economics this afternoon.

He is writing a book on cooking.

He told me a lot about his life in the summer vacation.

2)by, with, in 表示方法、手段、工具

by 以.....方法、手段或泛指某種交通工具；

with 表示用...工具、手段, 一般接具體的工具和手段；

in 表示用...方式, 用...語言(語調、筆墨、顏色)等；

He makes a living by selling newspapers.

He broke the window with a stone.

The foreigner spoke to us in English.

3)except, besides 除了

except 除.....之外, 不包括在內；

besides 除.....之外, 包括在內。

Except Mr. Wang, we went to see the film.(王先生沒去)

Besides Mr. Wang, we also went to see the film.(王先生也去了)

### 三.鞏固練習

1. Taiwan is \_\_\_\_\_ the southeast of China. (in, on, to)

2. Go \_\_\_\_\_ the bridge \_\_\_\_\_ the river, you'll find the shop. (across, through; over, above)

3. I go to school \_\_\_\_\_ 7:30 every morning. (in, on, at)

4. He would like to meet her \_\_\_\_\_ 8:00 and 9:00 tomorrow morning. (between, among)

5. The Greens have lived in China \_\_\_\_\_ three years. (in, for, after)

6. We go to school every day \_\_\_\_\_ Saturday and Sunday. (except, besides)

7. He wrote the letter \_\_\_\_\_ ink. (by, with ,in)
8. She returned to her country \_\_\_\_\_ five years. (in, after, for)
9. There is a big tree \_\_\_\_\_ our classroom. (after, behind)
10. I usually go to work \_\_\_\_\_ bike. (by, on, with)

#### 四.答案

1.in 2.across, over 3.at, 4.between 5.for 6.except 7.in 8.after 9.behind 10.by

### 第16章 連詞

#### 一.概念

連詞是用來連接詞,短語,從句或句子的詞.連詞不作成分.

#### 二.相關知識點精講

1.表示並列關係的連詞有:and, both...and..., not only... but also... 和 neither...nor...等

1)and: 和, 並且

A: 基本用法:

“and”表示“和”、“並且”的意思, 用來連接對等關係的字和字, 片語和片語, 句子和句子。

I enjoy basketball , football and table tennis.

The weather becomes colder and colder.

B:特別用法:

祈使句後連接and, 有條件句作用, 此時and=if you...,you'll...

Go straight on, and you'll see the library.=If you go straight on, you will see the library.

2)both...and...既...也..., (兩者)都...

A、 both...and...構成的片語作主語時,謂語動詞用複數。

Both Jim and Kate are from England.

B、 both...and...否定句表示部分否定。

You can't speak both German and English.

Both my father and my mother aren't doctors.

3)neither...nor...:既不...也不...

neither...nor...連接兩個並列主語時,謂語動詞靠近哪個主語就與哪個主語保持“人稱”和“數”的一致, 即採取就近原則。

Neither I nor he has seen the play before.

4)not only...but also...:不但...而且...

not only...but also...連接兩個主語後的謂語動詞也遵循就近原則。

Not only the mother but also the children are ill.

2.表示轉折關係的連詞有:but, however, yet, still, while等。

Mary was a nice girl, but she had one shortcoming.

Tom got up early, yet he failed to catch the train.

He was very tired, still he kept on walking.

Your composition is fairly good, however, there is still some room for improvement.

Jane is hard working ,while her sister is quite lazy.

3.表示選擇關係的並列連詞有:or, either...or...,whether... or...等。

1)or: 或、否則

A:基本用法

or 表示“或”的意思, 使用於兩者之中選擇一個的時候。

---Is your friend English or American? ---American.

He doesn't like dumplings or noodles.

B:特別用法

祈使句後連接or, 表“如果...,否則...”,有轉折的意思,此時or =if you don't ...,you'll ...

Hurry up, or you'll be late.=If you don't hurry up, you'll be late.

2)either...or...:或者...或者...; 不是...就是...; 要麼...要麼...

A. either...or...連接兩個並列主語時,謂語動詞靠近哪個主語就與哪個主語保持“人稱”和“數”的一致,即就近原則。

Either you or I am right.

Does either she or they like English?

B. 由either...or...引導的否定句是完全否定。

She isn't either a student or a teacher.

3)whether...or...不管...還是...

She is always cheerful, whether at home or at school.

4.表示因果關係的並列連詞有:for(因為), so(所以)。

He is not at school today, for he has a bad cold.

It was late, so I went home.

5.引導時間狀語從句的從屬連詞有: before, after, when, while, as, till, until, since, as soon as等。

After they had planted their crops, they took a rest.

We have learned six lessons since he began to teach us.

As soon as he gets to Beijing, he'll call me.

1) when, while, as 都表示“當.....時”, when從句謂語動詞既可以是瞬間動詞也可以是延續性動詞,可用於主從句動作同時發生或從句動作先於主句動作發生。while從句謂語動詞只能是延續性動詞,側重主從句動作同時發生。as引導一個持續性動作,多用於主從句動作同時發生,強調“一邊.....一邊”。

When I came in, my father was cooking.

I came in when/while my father was cooking.

He sang as he walked.

2)until用法:當主句謂語動詞是延續性動詞時,主從句都用肯定式,譯為“直到.....為止”;當主句謂語動詞是瞬間動詞時,主句用否定式,從句用肯定式,即not.....until,譯為“直到.....才”。

Mr. Green waited until his children came back.(格林先生一直等到他的孩子們回來)

Mr. Green didn't go to bed until his children came back. (格林先生直到他的孩子們回來才睡覺)

6. 引導條件狀語從句的從屬連詞有:if(如果), unless(除非, 如果.....不)等。

If you don't go soon, you'll be late.=Unless you go soon, you'll be late.

7.引導原因狀語從句的從屬連詞有 because, as, since等。

because“因為”語氣最強,回答why提問時只能用because, 其引導的從句可放在句首或句末;as“由於”、since“既然”語氣不如because強,引導的從句常置於句首;for是並列連詞,語氣最弱,對前面分句加以解釋或補充說明,其引導的分句常置於句末且用逗號隔開。

He didn't go to school because he was ill.

As it was raining, we went there by bus.

Since everybody is here, let's begin.

It must have rained last night, for the ground is wet.





- 8、He is only ten months. He can read write.  
 A. either...or B. neither...nor  
 C. both...and D. so...that
- 9、She said she might come Saturday Sunday .  
 A. neither...nor B. nither...or  
 C. too...to D. so...that
- 10、If Tom Mike asks for their car, tell him to come tomorrow.  
 A. or B. and C. with  
 D. but
- 11、It was already ten o'clock we got to the museum this morning.  
 A. that B. when  
 C. if D. for
- 12、It's a long time we met last.  
 A. so B. after C. since D. before
- 13、That maths problem is difficult nobody can do it.  
 A. too...to B. very...that  
 C. so...that D. very ...but
- 14、I'll give her the message she comes back.  
 A. since B. before  
 C. until D. as soon as
- 15、 the teacher came into the classroom, many students were talking to each other.  
 A. While B. If  
 C. Since D. When
- 16、People often mistake us for each other we are twins.  
 A. if B. when  
 C. because D. after
- 17、Could you tell me in your home town in winter?  
 A. if it often snowed B. whether does it often snow  
 C. if it often snow D. whether it often snows
- 18、Are you sure Mr. Li will come to your birthday party?  
 A. if B. that C. for  
 D. when
- 19、 Lily Lucy like singing.  
 A. Either...or B. Beither...nor ...  
 C. Both...and D. So...that
- 20、Read the sentences slowly we can understand what you read.  
 A. so that B. before C. until  
 D. because

#### 四.答案

- |     |      |      |      |      |      |    |
|-----|------|------|------|------|------|----|
| 1、D | 2、A  | 3、A  | 4、D  | 5、C  | 6、A  | 7、 |
| B   | 8、B  | 9、B  | 10、A | 11、B | 12、C | 13 |
| 、C  | 14、D | 15、D | 16、C | 17、D | 18、B | 19 |
| 、C  | 20、A |      |      |      |      |    |

#### 第17章 構詞法

##### 一.概念

英語的構詞法主要有:合成法,轉化法,派生法,混成法,截短法和詞首字母縮略法。  
二.相關知識點精講

### 1.轉化法

英語中,有的名詞可作動詞,有的形容詞可作副詞或動詞,這種把一種詞性用作另一種詞性而詞形不變的方法叫作轉化法。

#### 1)動詞轉化為名詞

很多動詞可以轉化為名詞,大多意思沒有多大的變化(如下①);有時意思有一定變化(如下②);有的與一個動詞和不定冠詞構成短語,表示一個動作(如下③)。例如:

- ①Let's go out for a walk.我們到外面去散散步吧。
- ②He is a man of strong build.他是一個體格健壯的漢子。
- ③Let's have a swim.咱們游泳吧。

#### 2)名詞轉化為動詞

很多表示物件(如下①)、身體部位(如下②)、某類人(如下③)的名詞可以用作動詞來表示動作,某些抽象名詞(如下④)也可作動詞。例如:

- ①Did you book a seat on the plane?你訂好飛機座位了嗎?
- ②Please hand me the book.請把那本書遞給我。
- ③She nursed her husband back to health.她看護丈夫,使他恢復了健康。
- ④We lunched together.我們在一起吃了午餐。

#### 3)形容詞轉化為動詞

有少數形容詞可以轉化為動詞。例如:

We will try our best to better our living conditions.我們要盡力改善我們的生活狀況。

#### 4)副詞轉化為動詞

有少數副詞可以轉化為動詞。例如:

Murder will out.(諺語)惡事終必將敗露。

#### 5)形容詞轉化為名詞

表示顏色的形容詞常可轉化為名詞(如下①);某些形容詞如old, young, poor, rich, wounded, injured等與the連用,表示一類人,作主語時,謂語用複數(如下②)。例如:

You should be dressed in black at the funeral.你在葬禮中該穿黑色衣服。

The old in our village are living a happy life.我們村的老年人過著幸福的生活。

### 2.派生法

在詞根前面加首碼或在詞根後面加尾碼構成一個與原單詞意義相近或截然相反的新詞叫作派生法。

#### 1)首碼

除少數首碼外,首碼一般改變單詞的意義,不改變詞性;尾碼一般改變詞類,而不引起詞義的變化。

(1)表示否定意義的首碼常用的有dis-, il-, im-, in-, ir-, mis-, non-, un-等,在單詞的前面加這類首碼常構成與該詞意義相反的新詞。例如:

- appear出現→disappear消失
- correct正確的→incorrect不正確的
- lead帶領→mislead領錯
- stop停下→non-stop不停

(2)表示其他意義的首碼常用的有a-(多構成表語形容詞), anti-(反對;抵抗), auto-(自動), co-(共同), en-(使), inter-(互相), re-(再;又), sub-(下麵的;次;小), tele-(強調距離)等。例如:

alone單獨的antigas防毒氣的

autochart自動圖表

cooperate合作enjoy使高興

internet互聯網reuse再用

subway地鐵telephone電話

## 2)尾碼

英語單詞不僅可以通過加首碼構成新詞，也可加尾碼構成新詞。尾碼通常會改變單詞的詞性，構成意義相近的其他詞性；少數尾碼還會改變詞義，變為與原來詞義相反的新詞。

(1)構成名詞的尾碼常用的有-ence, -(e)r/ -or (從事某事的人),-ese (某地人), -ess (雌性), -ful (一……), -ian (精通……的人), -ist (專業人員), -ment (性質;狀態), -ness (性質;狀態), -tion(動作;過程)等。例如：

differ不同於→difference區別

write寫→writer作家

Japan日本→Japanese日本人

act表演→actress女演員

mouth口→mouthful一口

music音樂→musician音樂家

(2)構成動詞的尾碼常用的有-(e)n (多用於形容詞之後), -fy (使……化), -ize (使……成為)。例如：

wide→widen加寬

beauty→beautify美化

pure→purify提純

real→realize意識到

organ→organize組織

(3)構形成容詞的尾碼常用的有-al, -able (有能力的), -(a)n(某國人的), -en (多用於表示材料的名詞後), -ern (方向的), -ese(某國人的), -ful, -(ic)al, -ish, -ive, -less (表示否定), -like (像……的), -ly, -ous, -some, -y (表示天氣)等。例如：

nature自然→natural自然的

reason道理→reasonable有道理的

America美國→American美國的

China中國→Chinese中國人的

gold金子→golden金的

east東→eastern東方的

child孩子→childish孩子氣的

snow雪→snowy雪的

(4)構成副詞的常用尾碼有-ly (主要用於形容詞之後表示方式或程度), -ward(s) (主要用於表示方位的詞之後表示方向)。例如：

angry生氣的→angrily生氣地

to到→towards朝……, 向……

east東方→eastward向東

(5)構成數詞的尾碼有-teen (十幾), -ty (幾十), -th (構成序數詞)。例如：

six六→sixteen十六→sixteenth第十六

four四→forty四十→fortieth第四十

## 3.合成法

### 1)合成名詞

### 構成方式例詞

名詞＋名詞weekend週末  
名詞＋動詞daybreak黎明  
名詞＋動名詞handwriting書法  
名詞＋及物動詞＋er／or pain-killer止痛藥  
名詞＋介詞＋名詞editor-in-chief總編輯  
代詞＋名詞she-wolf母狼  
動詞＋名詞typewriter打字機  
動名詞＋名詞reading-room閱覽室  
現在分詞＋名詞flying-fish飛魚  
形容詞＋名詞gentleman紳士  
副詞＋動詞outbreak爆發  
介詞＋名詞afternoon下午

### 2) 合形成容詞

名詞＋形容詞snow-white雪白的  
名詞＋現在分詞English-speaking講英語的  
名詞＋to＋名詞face-to-face面對面的  
名詞＋過去分詞man-made人造的  
數詞＋名詞one-way單行的  
數詞＋名詞＋形容詞two-year-old兩歲的  
數詞＋名詞＋ed five-storeyed五層的  
動詞＋副詞see-through透明的  
形容詞＋名詞high-class高級的  
形容詞＋名詞＋ed noble-minded高尚的  
形容詞＋形容詞light-blue淺藍色的  
形容詞＋現在分詞good-looking相貌好看的  
副詞＋形容詞ever-green常青的  
副詞＋現在分詞hard-working勤勞的  
副詞＋過去分詞well-known著名的  
副詞＋名詞fast-food專門提供速食服務的  
介詞＋名詞downhill下坡的

### 3) 合成動詞

名詞＋動詞sleep-walk夢遊  
形容詞＋動詞white-wash粉刷  
副詞＋動詞overthrow推翻

### 4) 合成副詞

形容詞＋名詞hotfoot匆忙地  
形容詞＋副詞everywhere到處  
副詞＋副詞however儘管如此  
介詞＋名詞beforehand事先  
介詞＋副詞forever永遠

### 5) 合成代詞

代詞賓格＋self herself她自己  
物主代詞＋self myself我自己  
形容詞＋名詞anything任何東西

### 6) 合成介詞

副詞＋名詞inside在……裡面





- C.spoken-English                      D.English-spoken
- 19.How \_\_\_\_\_ he is! He is always acting \_\_\_\_\_.He is really a \_\_\_\_\_.
- A.foolish ; foolishly ; fool  
B.fool ; foolish ; fool  
C.foolish ; fool ; fool  
D.foolishly ; foolish ; fool
- 20.The necklace that she lost is very expensive.It's of great \_\_\_\_\_.
- A.valuable                                      B.value  
C.valueless                                      D.unvaluable
- 21.There were \_\_\_\_\_ fish in the river in South America.
- A.in danger                                      B.danger  
C.dangerous                                      D.dangerless
- 22.The letter "b" in the word "doubt" is \_\_\_\_\_.
- A.sound    B.silent  
C.silence    D.sounded
- 23.The child looked at me \_\_\_\_\_.
- A.stranger    B.strangely  
C.strange    D.strangeless
- 24.The black people were against slavery and fought for their \_\_\_\_\_ bravely.
- A.free    B.freely  
C.freedom    D.frees
- 25.What you said sounded \_\_\_\_\_ but in fact it was untrue.
- A.reasonable    B.reasonful  
C.reasonless    D.unreason
- 26.We have to learn \_\_\_\_\_ technology from other countries.
- A.advance    B.advancing  
C.advantage    D.advanced
- 27.The children live in a village \_\_\_\_\_.They come here almost every day.
- A.nearby    B.near  
C.nearly    D.near by
- 28.Mr Black is an \_\_\_\_\_ in the army, not an \_\_\_\_\_ in the government.You can not easily find him in his \_\_\_\_\_.
- A.official ; officer ; office  
B.officer ; office ; official  
C.official ; official ; official  
D.officer ; official ; office
- 29.You'd better give up smoking if you want to keep \_\_\_\_\_.
- A.health    B.healthy  
C.healthily    D.healthier
30. \_\_\_\_\_ speaking, I didn't do it on purpose.
- A.Honestly    B.Honest  
C.Honesty    D.Dishonest

#### 四.答案

1-5 BDACB    6-10 CBDCB    11-15 ACDCB    16-20 BAAAB  
21-25 CBBCA    26-30 DADBA

## 高考總複習之英語語法

英語語法，指英語中語言的結構規律，包括詞法和句法。高考中占分比重較大的就是句法，而句法中較為重要的是句子成分和句型結構。

### 一、句子成分

組成句子的各個部分叫句子成分。英語句子成分有主語，謂語，表語，賓語，賓語補足語，定語，狀語等。

#### 1、主語

主語表示句子主要說明的人或事物，一般由名詞，代詞，數詞，不定式等充當。

You are geillivable. I believe you can make it. 你很給力，我相信你能做好的。

#### 2、謂語

謂語說明主語的動作，狀態或特徵。由動詞(或短語動詞)、情態動詞+不定式組成。

I love you.

You can make friends with me.

#### 3、表語

表語是謂語的一部分，它位於系動詞如be之後，常有系表結構。

You are handsome. 你很帥哦~

#### 4、賓語

賓語表示動作行為的物件，跟在及物動詞之後，能作賓語的有名詞，代詞，數詞，動詞不定式等。

I love you.

有些及物動詞可以帶兩個賓語，往往一個指人，一個指物，指人的叫間接賓語，指物的叫直接賓語。

You gave me(間接賓語) courage(直接賓語) 你給我勇氣。

#### 5、定語

在句中修飾名詞或代詞的成分叫定語。

用作定語的主要是形容詞，代詞，數詞，名詞，副詞，動詞不定式，介詞短語等。

You are a brave boy.

The bike in the room is mine. 房間裡的自行車是我的。

#### 6、狀語

修飾動詞，形容詞，副詞以及全句的句子成分，叫做狀語。用作狀語的通常是副詞，介詞短語，不定式和從句等。

I love travelling in the spring. 介詞短語修飾travel

7.補語用來說明賓語或主語所處的狀態或正在進行的動作，因為英語中有些動詞加賓語後意思仍然不完整，如：make(使...),ask(請)等等。如果我們說：你使我。這不是一句完整的話。應該說：你使我快樂。這是的“happy”為形容詞做補語，說明我的狀態。

You make me happy.

作補語的詞或片語為：形容詞，副詞，名詞，不定式，ing形式，數詞等。

## 二、句型結構

### 一、簡單句

#### 1.主語+謂語

這種句型簡稱為主謂結構，其謂語一般都是不及物動詞，例：

Things change. 事物是變化的。

#### 2.主語+連系動詞+表語(系表結構)

I am fine.



### 3.主語+謂語+賓語

這種句型可稱為主謂賓結構，它的謂語一般多是及物動詞，例：

I love you.

### 4.主語+謂語+賓語+賓語

這種句型可稱為主謂賓賓結構，其謂語應是可有雙賓語的及物動詞，兩個賓語一個是間接賓語，一個是直接賓語，例：

You gave me(間接賓語) courage(直接賓語) 你給我勇氣。

### 5.主語+謂語+賓語+賓補

I found the book easy.我發現這本書不難。(形容詞easy作補語)

#### \*It 引導結構

作形式主語(it is + adj. + for/of sb. to do sth.)或形式賓語(it + adj. + to do sth.)

It is nice to know.認識你很高興。

## 二、並列句

兩個或兩個以上的簡單句用並列連詞連在一起構成的句子,叫做並列句,其基本結構是“簡單句+並列連詞+簡單句”。並列連詞有:and, but, or, so等。

You love music and you are good at music .

三、複合句,即各種從句。包括名詞性從句(主語從句、賓語從句、表語從句、同位語從句)、定語從句、狀語從句。高考中占分比最大的是賓語從句、表語從句、同位語、主語、定語

#### (1)表語從句

1. 定義:用作表語的從句叫做表語從句。

2. 構成:關聯詞+簡單句

3. 引導表語從句的關聯詞的種類:

(1) 連詞that。如:

The trouble is that I have lost his address. 麻煩是我把他的地址丟了。

(2) 連詞whether, as, as if。如:

He looked just as he had looked ten years before. 他看起來還與十年前一樣。

The question is whether they will be able to help us. 問題是他們是否能幫我們。

注:從屬連詞if一般不用來引導表語從句,但as if卻可引導表語從句,如:

All this was over twenty years ago, but it's as if it was only yesterday.

這都是20多年前的事了,但宛如昨天一樣。

能跟表語從句的謂語動詞一般為系動詞be, seem, look等。如:

It looked as if it was going to rain. 看起來天要下雨了。

(3)連接代詞who, whom, whose, what, which, whoever, whatever, whichever

連接副詞 where, when, how, why。

如:The problem is who we can get to replace her. 問題是我們能找到誰去替換她呢。

The question is how he did it. 問題是他是如何做此事的。

That was what she did this morning on reaching the attic. 那就是她今晨上了閣樓幹的。

解釋:

1. 連詞because可引導表語從句。如:

I think it is because you are doing too much. 我想這是因為你做得太多。

2. 在一些表示“建議、勸說、命令”的名詞後面的表語從句中,謂語動詞用虛擬語氣。should+動詞原形表示,should可省略。如:

My suggestion is that we (should) start early tomorrow. 我的建議是我們明天一早就出發。

## (2) 主語從句

1. 定義: 用作主語的從句叫做主語從句。
2. 構成: 關聯詞+簡單句
3. 引導主語從句的關聯詞有三類:

(1) 從屬連詞that。如: That they were in truth sisters was clear from the facial resemblance between them.

很明顯, 她們確是親姐妹, 她們的臉型很相似。

(2) 從屬連詞whether。如:

Whether he'll come here isn't clear. 他是否會來這裡還不清楚。

(3) 連接代詞who, whom, whose, what, which, whoever, whatever, whichever  
連接副詞 where, when, how, why。如:

What she did is not yet known. 她幹了什麼尚不清楚。

How this happened is not clear to anyone. 這事怎樣發生的, 誰也不清楚。

Whoever comes is welcome. 不論誰來都歡迎。

Wherever you are is my home ---- my only home. 你所在的任何地方就是我的家----  
我唯一的家。

解釋:

1. 主語從句能用it作形式上的主語。常以it作形式主語的句型有:

A. It+be+形容詞(obvious, true, natural, surprising, good, wonderful, funny, possible, likely, certain, probable, etc.)+that從句。如:

It is certain that she will do well in her exam. 毫無疑問她考試成績會很好。

It is probable that he told her everything. 很可能他把一切都告訴她了。

B. It+be+名詞片語(no wonder, an honour, a good thing, a pity, no surprise, etc.)+that從句。如:

It's a pity that we can't go. 很遺憾我們不能去。

It's no surprise that our team should have won the game. 我們沒贏這場比賽真意外。

C. It+be+過去分詞(said, reported, thought, expected, decided, announced, arranged, etc.)+that從句。如:

It is said that Mr. Green has arrived in Beijing. 據說格林先生已經到了北京。

It is reported that China has sent another man-made earth satellite into orbit.

據報導中國又成功地發射了一顆人造地球衛星。

D. It+seem, happen等不及物動詞及短語+that從句。如:

It seems that Alice is not coming to the party at all. Alice似乎不來參加晚會。

It happened that I was out that day. 碰巧我那天外出了。

E. It+doesn't matter (makes no difference, etc.)+連接代詞或連接副詞引起的主語從句。如:

It doesn't matter whether she will come or not. 她是否來這無關緊要。

It makes no difference where we shall have the meeting. 我們在哪裡開會毫無區別。

F. 當that引導的主語從句出現在疑問句中時, 要以it作形式主語, 而把主語從句後置。如:

Is it true that the scientist will give us a lecture next week? 下周那位科學家將給我們作報告是真的嗎?

Does it matter much that they will not come tomorrow? 他們明天不來很要緊嗎?

G. 當主語從句出現在感歎句中時, 要以it作形式主語, 而把主語從句後置。如:

How strange it is that the children are so quiet! 孩子們這麼安靜真奇怪!

## 2. 注意連接代詞whoever, whatever, whichever等引導主語從句的含義

Whoever comes will be welcome. (whoever=the person who) 來的人將受到歡迎。

Whatever he did was right. (whatever=the thing that) 他所做的事情是正確的。

Whichever of you comes in will receive a prize. (whichever=anyone of you who) 你們當中不論哪個進來將會得到獎

### (3) 賓語從句

1. 定義: 用作賓語的從句叫賓語從句。

2. 構成: 關聯詞+簡單句

3. 引導賓語從句的關聯詞有三類:

(1) 從屬連詞that。如:

He told us that he felt ill. 他對我們說他感到不舒服。

I know he has returned. 我知道他已經回來了。

注: that在引導賓語從句時也並不是任何情況下都可以省略。在以下情況下, that不能省略。

1. Everybody could see what happened and that Tom was frightened.(and連接兩個賓語從句, that賓語從句放在and的後面時, that不能省略。)

大家都會看出所發生的事情並知道Tom非常害怕。

2. I know nothing about him except that he is from the south.(that引導的賓語從句作介詞賓語時, that不能省略。)

對他我一無所知, 只知道他是南方人。

3. That he ever said such a thing I simply don't believe. (that從句位於句首時, that不可省略。)

我簡直不相信他曾說過這樣的話。

4. We decided, in view of his special circumstances, that we would admit him for a probationary period. (主句謂語動詞與that從句之間有插入語, that不可省略。)

鑒於他的特殊情況, 我們決定應允他一段試用期。

(2) 從屬連詞if/whether。如:

I doubt whether he will succeed. 我懷疑他是否會成功。

I don't know if you can help me. 我不知道你能否幫助我。

(3) 連接代詞who, whom, whose, what, which, whoever, whatever, whichever

連接副詞 where, when, how, why。

如:

Who or what he was, Martin never learned.

他是什麼人? 他是幹什麼的? 馬丁根本不知道。

I wonder what he's writing to me about. 我不知道他要給我寫信說什麼事。

I'll tell you why I asked you to come. 我會告訴你我為什麼要你來。

You may do what you will. 你可做任何你想做的事。

(1) 介詞賓語從句

賓語從句也可用作介詞的賓語。如:

He was deeply displeased by what had occurred that day.

他對那天發生的事感到很不快。

I walked over to where she sat. 我走向她坐的地方。

I am curious as to what he will say. 我很想知道他要說什麼。

Your success will largely depend upon what you do and how you do it.

你是否成功將主要取決於你做什麼和怎樣做。

有時介詞可以省略。如:

I don't care (for) who marries him. 我不管誰跟他結婚。

Be careful (as to) how you do that. 你要注意做這件事的方式。

解釋：

1. 如果賓語從句後還有賓語補足語，則用it作形式賓語，而將賓語從句後置。如：  
We thought it strange that Xiao Wang did not come yesterday.

我們認為小王昨天沒來是奇怪的。

He has made it clear that he will not give in.

他已表明他不會屈服。

2. 作介詞的賓語：連詞that引導的名詞性從句很少作介詞的賓語，只用在except, but, in後。其他一些介詞的賓語從句如果由連詞that引導，則需用it先行一步，作形式賓語。如：

He is a good student except that he is careless.

他是一個好學生，只是有點粗心。

You may rely on it that I shall help you. 你可以指望我會幫助你的。

介詞賓語不可以用which來引導，而要用what來引導。如：

Are you sorry for what you've done?

你為你所做的一切感到內疚嗎？

3. 某些形容詞或過去分詞後常接賓語從句，這類形容詞或過去分詞有sure, glad, certain, pleased, happy, afraid, surprised, satisfied等，連詞that可省略。如：

I am not sure what I ought to do.

我不能確定我該做什麼。

I'm afraid you don't understand what I said.

恐怕你沒領會我說的意思。

I'm surprised that I didn't see all that before.

我好奇，我以前沒看到過。

Mother was very pleased her daughter had passed the exams.

媽媽為她的女兒通過了考試而感到高興。

4. 連詞whether (...or not)或if引導的賓語從句

if和whether引導的賓語從句可以互換使用，但whether常和or not連用，if一般不與or not連用。如：

I wonder whether it is true or not. 我不知它是真是假。

用if引導賓語從句如果會引起歧義，應避免使用if而用whether。試比較：

Please let me know if you want to go.

Please let me know whether you want to go.

if從句可理解為賓語從句，意為“請告訴我你是否想去”；此句又可理解為條件狀語從句意為“如果你想去的話，請告訴我一聲”。

5. 賓語從句的否定轉移。在think, believe, suppose, expect等動詞後的賓語從句，有時謂語儘管是否定意思，卻不用否定形式，而將think等動詞變為否定形式。如：

I don't think you are right. 我認為你錯了。

I don't believe they have finished their work yet. 我相信他們還未完成他們的工作。

I don't suppose he cares, does he? 我想他不在意，是嗎？

6. 賓語從句的時態變化規律：

(1) 當主句是一般現在時態時，從句可根據需要用任何時態。

(2) 當主句是一般過去時態時，從句只能使用過去範圍內的任何時態。但客觀真理除外。如：

The teacher said that the earth goes round the sun.

老師說地球繞著太陽運行

(4) 同位語從句

1. 定義:用作同位語的從句叫做同位語從句。

2. 用法:同位語從句的先行詞多為fact, news, idea, thought, question, reply, report, remark等, 關聯詞多用從屬連詞that。如:

They were all very much worried over the fact that you were sick.

對你生病這件事, 他們都很焦慮。

Where did you get the idea that I could not come?

你在哪兒聽說我不能來?

Early in the day came the news that Germany had declared war on Russia.

德國已對俄國宣戰的消息一大早就傳來了。

注:同位語從句偶爾由從屬連詞whether引導。如:

I have no idea whether he'll come or not. 我不知道他是否來。

連接代詞who, which, what和連接副詞where, when, why, how亦可引導同位語從句。

The question who should do the work requires consideration.

誰該幹這項工作, 這個問題需要考慮。

We haven't yet settled the question where we are going to spend our summer vacation.

到哪兒去度暑假, 這個問題我們還沒有決定。

It is a question how he did it.

那是一個他如何做了此事的問題。

解釋:

1. that引導的同位語從句與定語從句之區別

that引導的同位語從句

that引導的定語從句

句法功能上

that只起連接從句的作用, 無意義。在從句中不充當句子成分。不可省。

that替代先行詞在從句中不僅起連接作用, 還充當一個句子成分。如在從句中作動詞的賓語時可省略。

意義上

從句是被修飾名詞的內容。

從句起限定作用, 是定語

如:The news that Mr. Li will be our new English teacher is true. (同位語從句, that不可省。)

李先生將是我們的新英語老師這個消息是真的。

The news (that) he told me yesterday is true. (定語從句, that在從句中作told的賓語, 可省。)

他昨天告訴我的消息是真的。

2. 一些表示“建議、命令、要求”的名詞後所跟的同位語從句中, 謂語動詞用虛擬語氣should+動詞原形表示。should可省。如:

This is our only request that this (should) be settled as soon as possible.

這就是我們唯一的請求:儘快解決這個問題。

(5)同位語從句

1. 定義:用作同位語的從句叫做同位語從句。

2. 用法:同位語從句的先行詞多為fact, news, idea, thought, question, reply, report, remark等, 關聯詞多用從屬連詞that。如:

They were all very much worried over the fact that you were sick.

對你生病這件事, 他們都很焦慮。

Where did you get the idea that I could not come?

你在哪兒聽說我不能來？

Early in the day came the news that Germany had declared war on Russia.

德國已對俄國宣戰的消息一大早就傳來了。

注：同位語從句偶爾由從屬連詞whether引導。如：

I have no idea whether he'll come or not. 我不知道他是否來。

連接代詞who, which, what和連接副詞where, when, why, how亦可引導同位語從句。

The question who should do the work requires consideration.

誰該幹這項工作，這個問題需要考慮。

We haven't yet settled the question where we are going to spend our summer vacation.

到哪兒去度暑假，這個問題我們還沒有決定。

It is a question how he did it.

那是一個他如何做了此事的問題。

解釋：

1. that引導的同位語從句與定語從句之區別

that引導的同位語從句

that引導的定語從句

句法功能上

that只起連接從句的作用，無意義。在從句中不充當句子成分。不可省。

that替代先行詞在從句中不僅起連接作用，還充當一個句子成分。如在從句中作動詞的賓語時可省略。

意義上

從句是被修飾名詞的內容。

從句起限定作用，是定語

如：The news that Mr. Li will be our new English teacher is true. (同位語從句，that不可省。)

李先生將是我們的新英語老師這個消息是真的。

The news (that) he told me yesterday is true. (定語從句，that在從句中作told的賓語，可省。)

他昨天告訴我的消息是真的。

2. 一些表示“建議、命令、要求”的名詞後所跟的同位語從句中，謂語動詞用虛擬語氣should+動詞原形表示。should可省。如：

This is our only request that this (should) be settled as soon as possible.

這就是我們唯一的請求：儘快解決這個問題。

測試：

A. 用適當的連接詞填空：

1. It worried her a bit ( ) her hair was turning gray.

2. I have no idea ( ) we can do with these waste materials.

3. The doctor really doubts is ( ) ( ) my mother will recover from the serious disease soon.

4. It is hoped ( ) nature will never be destroyed.

5. Do you guess ( ) will give a talk on English tomorrow?

6. ---- I drove to Zhuhai for the air show last week.  
 ---- Is that ( ) you had a few days off?  
 7. Word came ( ) I was wanted at the office.  
 8. Do you know ( ) of them will be our new headmaster?  
 9. The teacher didn't tell me ( ) we were wrong.

B. 單項選擇：

1. It was true Alice did surprised her mother.  
 A. that B. what C. that, what D. what, that  
 2. Does matter much he can't come to the meeting.  
 A. it, if B. that, if C. it, whether D. this, whether  
 3. ----What are you anxious about? ---- .  
 A. How can we succeed B. Whether we can succeed  
 C. When can we succeed D. That we can succeed  
 4. The reason the little actress has been such a success is she is both clever and hard-working.  
 A. why, why B. why, that C. that, because D. for, because  
 5. leaves the room last ought to turn off the lights.  
 A. Who B. Whoever C. Anyone D. The person  
 6. I really don't know \_\_\_\_\_ I had this photo taken.  
 A. where it was that B. it was that C. where it was D. it was why  
 7. Dr. Black comes from either Oxford or Cambridge. I can't remember .  
 A. where B. there C. which D. that  
 8. ----What do you think of China? --- different life is today from it used to be.  
 A. How, what B. What, what C. How, that D. What, that  
 9. Give this to you think can do the work well.  
 A. who B. whom C. whoever D. whomever  
 10. troubles me is I can't learn all these English idioms by heart.  
 A. That, that B. What, what C. That, what D. What, that

答案：

- A. 1. that 2. what 3. what, whether 4. that  
 5. who 6. why 7. that 8. which  
 9. where  
 B. 1-5 CABBB 6-10 ACACD

高中英語語法

學習提綱

看到p50謂語

時態

一、詞類、句子成分和構詞法：

1、詞類：英語詞類分十種：

名詞、形容詞、代詞、數詞、冠詞、動詞、副詞、介詞、連詞、感歎詞。

1、名詞(n.): 表示人、事物、地點或抽象概念的名稱。如：boy, morning, bag, ball, class, orange.

2、代詞(pron.): 主要用來代替名詞。如：who, she, you, it .

3、形容詞(adj.): 表示人或事物的性質或特徵。如：good, right, white, orange .

4、數詞(num.): 表示數目或事物的順序。如: one, two, three, first, second, third, fourth.

5、動詞(v.): 表示動作或狀態。如: am, is, are, have, see .

6、副詞(adv.): 修飾動詞、形容詞或其他副詞, 說明時間、地點、程度等。如: now, very, here, often, quietly, slowly.

7、冠詞(art.): 用在名詞前, 幫助說明名詞。如: a, an, the.

8、介詞(prep.): 表示它後面的名詞或代詞與其他句子成分的關係。如 in, on, from, above, behind.

9、連詞(conj.): 用來連接詞、短語或句子。如 and, but, before .

10、感歎詞(interj.) 表示喜、怒、哀、樂等感情。如: oh, well, hi, hello.

2、句子成分: 英語句子成分分為七種: 主語、謂語、賓語、定語、狀語、表語、賓語補足語。

1、主語是句子所要說的人或事物, 回答是“誰”或者“什麼”。通常用名詞或代詞擔任。如: I'm Miss Green. (我是格林小姐)

2、謂語動詞說明主語的動作或狀態, 回答“做(什麼)”。主要由動詞擔任。如: Jack cleans the room every day. (傑克每天打掃房間)

3、表語在系動詞之後, 說明主語的身份或特徵, 回答是“什麼”或者“怎麼樣”。通常由名詞、代詞或形容詞擔任。如: My name is Ping ping. (我的名字叫萍萍)

4、賓語表示及物動詞的物件或結果, 回答做的是“什麼”。通常由名詞或代詞擔任。如: He can spell the word. (他能拼這個詞)

有些及物動詞帶有兩個賓語, 一個指物, 一個指人。指物的叫直接賓語, 指人的叫間接賓語。間接賓語一般放在直接賓語的前面。如: He wrote me a letter. (他給我寫了一封信)

有時可把介詞to或for加在間接賓語前構成短語, 放在直接賓語後面, 來強調間接賓語。如: He wrote a letter to me. (他給我寫了一封信)

5、定語修飾名詞或代詞, 通常由形容詞、代詞、數詞等擔任。如:

Shanghai is a big city. (上海是個大城市)

6、狀語用來修飾動詞、形容詞、副詞, 通常由副詞擔任。如: He works hard. (他工作努力)

7、賓語補足語用來說明賓語怎麼樣或幹什麼, 通常由形容詞或動詞充當。如: They usually keep their classroom clean. (他們通常讓教室保持清潔) / He often helps me do my lessons. (他常常幫我做功課) / The teacher wanted me to learn French all by myself. (老師要我自學法語)

☆同位語通常緊跟在名詞、代詞後面, 進一步說明它的情況。如: Where is your classmate Tom? (你的同學湯姆在哪裡?)

3、構詞法: 英語構詞法主要有: 合成法、派生法和轉換法。

1、合成法: 如: spaceship, headache, basketball, playground等等。

2、派生法:

(1) 派生名詞: ①動詞+er/or ②動詞+ing ③動詞+(t)ion ④形容詞+ness ⑤其他, 如: inventor, learner, swimming, congratulation, kindness, carelessness, knowledge

(2) 派生形容詞: ①名詞+y ②名詞+ful ③動詞+ing/ed ④friendly ⑤dangerous ⑥Chinese; Japanese ⑦English ⑧French ⑨German ⑩國名+(i)an 如: snowy, sunny, hopeful, beautiful, interesting, following, daily(每日的), nervous, delicious

(3) 派生副詞: ①形容詞+ly ②其它, 如: slowly, angrily, full→fully, good→well, possible→possibly等等。

3、轉換法:

(1) 形容詞→動詞, 如: dry(乾燥的)→dry(弄幹), clean(乾淨的)→clean(打掃, 弄乾淨),



等等。

(2)動詞→名詞,如: look, walk, rest, work, study, swim, go, talk等等。

(3)名詞→動詞,如: hand(手)→(傳遞),face(臉)→(面對)等等。

(4)形容詞→副詞,如: early→early, fast→fast等等。

(5)副詞→連詞,如: when(什麼時候)→(當.....時候),等等。

(6)介詞→副詞,如: in(到.....裡)→(在裡面;在家),on(在...上)→(進行,繼續),等等。

## 二、名詞:

1、英語名詞可分專有名詞和普通名詞兩大類:

1、專有名詞是個別的人、地、物、團體、機構等的專用名稱。

專有名詞中實詞的第一個字母要大寫。

如: Beijing, Tom, the People's Republic of China(中華人民共和國)

專有名詞如果是含有普通名詞的短語,則必須使用定冠詞the。如: the Great Wall(長城)

姓氏名如果採用複數形式,則表示該姓氏一家人(複數含義),如: the Greens(格林一家人)。

2、普通名詞是許多人或事物的共有名稱。如: pupil, family, man, foot.

普通名詞又分為可數名詞和不可數名詞。

▲可數名詞是可以簡單用數詞進行計數的名詞,如: box, child, orange;

▲不可數名詞是不可以用簡單的數詞進行計數的名詞。如: water, news, oil, population, information.

2、英語可數名詞的單複數: 英語可數名詞有單數和複數兩種形式。

1、名詞由單數變複數的基本方法如下:

①在單數名詞詞尾加s。如: map → maps, boy → boys, horse → horses, table → tables.

②s, o, x, sh, ch結尾的詞加es。如: class → classes, box → boxes, hero → heroes, dish → dishes, bench → benches.

[注]: 少數以o結尾的詞,變複數時只加s。如: photo → photos, piano → pianos.

③以輔音字母加y結尾的名詞,變y為i,再加es。如: family → families, city → cities, party → parties.

④以f或fe結尾的名詞,變f或fe為v,再加es。如: shelf → shelves, wolf → wolves, life → lives, knife → knives.

2、不規則變化: man → men, woman → women, sheep → sheep, tooth → teeth, fish → fish, child → children, ox → oxen, goose → geese

不可數名詞一般沒有複數形式,說明其數量時,要用有關計量名詞。如: a bag of rice → two bags of rice, a piece of paper → three pieces of paper, a bottle of milk → five bottles of milk.

3、名詞所有格:

1、名詞所有格表示所屬關係,相當於物主代詞,在句中作定語、賓語或主語。其構成法如下:

(1)表示人或其它有生命的東西的名詞常在詞尾加's。如: Children's Day(兒童節), my sister's book(我姐姐的書)

(2)以s或es結尾的複數名詞。只在詞尾加'。如: Teachers' Day(教師節)

(3)有些表示時間、距離以及世界、國家、城鎮等無生命的名詞,也可在詞尾加's。如:

today's newspaper(今天的報紙), ten minutes' break(十分鐘的課間休息), China's population(中國的人口)。

(4)無論表示有生命還是無生命的東西的名詞,一般均可用介詞of短語來表示所有關係。如:

a fine daughter of the Party(黨的好女兒)。

2、[注解]:

① 's還可以表示某人的家或者某個店鋪,如: my aunt's(我阿姨家), the doctor's(診所)

② 兩人共有某物時,可以採用 A and B's 的形式,如: Lucy and Lily's bedroom(露西和麗麗合住的臥室)

③ "of+名詞所有格/名詞性物主代詞",稱為雙重所有格,如: a friend of my father's(我父親的一位朋友), a friend of mine(我的一位朋友)

4、名詞或代詞作主語時和謂語之間的單複數的一致問題:

1、謂語和謂語基本保持單複數的一致,即:主語是可數名詞單數或不可數名詞時,謂語動詞用單數形式:如: The computer was a great invention.(電腦是個了不起的發明)The water in the glass is very cold.(玻璃杯裡的水很冷)

2、集體名詞(如family, class, team, group, row, police, school等)做句子主語時,

① 如果表示整體概念,則謂語用單數形式,如: Class Three is a very good class.(三班是好班)

② 如果表示其中的所有成員時,則謂語用複數形式,如: Class Three have a map of China.(三

班有張中國地圖)

3、Chinese, Japanese, fish, sheep, people等表示單個時謂語用單數,表示許多時,謂語用複數。如: There is a sheep in the yard.(院子裡有只綿羊) / There are some sheep in the yard.(院子裡有一些綿羊)

4、maths, news等雖然有s結尾,但不是複數,因此謂語仍用單數: The news is very exciting. (這個消息令人興奮)

5、glasses, shoes, socks, trousers, gloves等名詞往往用複數形式,故謂語用複數。如:

The trousers are very cheap and I want to take them.(褲子很便宜,我想買)

6、a lot of 後跟名詞複數時謂語用複數形式,跟不可數名詞時謂語用單數形式。如: A lot of students are playing baseball now.(現在有許多學生在打壘球) A lot of time was wasted on that work.(大量的時間花在了那個工作上)(被動句)

7、and 連接兩個名詞做主語時,謂語原則上用複數,但是兩個名詞若構成一個整體事物時,謂語則用單數。如: The teacher and his son are picking apples now.(老師和他的兒子在摘蘋果) / Fish and chips is very famous food. (魚和薯條是一種出名的食品)

8、there be 句型中be的單複數一般由靠近的名詞決定。如: There is a table and four chairs in the room.(房間裡有一張桌子和四張椅子)

9、用both...and...連接兩個事物做主語時,謂語一般用複數。如: Both you and I are required to be here tomorrow.(你和我明天要求都來)

10、主語中含有with的短語時,謂語單複數由with之前的人物決定。如: A woman with a 7-year-old child was standing at the side of the road. (一名婦女帶著一個七歲的孩子(當時)就站在路邊)

11、either...or...或者 neither...nor...連接兩個人物做句子主語時,謂語採用就近原則。如: Either you or he is right.(要麼是你對,要麼是他對。/你和他有一個人是對的) / Neither you nor I am going there.(你和我都不打算去那裡)

12、表示一段時間或長度概念的複數名詞做主語時,謂語一般用單數。如: Two months is not a short time.(兩個月不是個短時間)Two thousand kilometers is quite

a long distance(距離).(兩千千米是相當長的一段距離)

13、主語中含有half of... / (three quarters)of... / all (of) the ...等詞語時,謂語的單複數由名詞確定,如: Over three quarters of the information on the Internet is in English.(網際網路上四分之三以上的資訊是用英語寫的) / A third of the students were playing near the lake.(學生的三分之一(當時)正在湖邊玩耍) / All of the water in these rivers has been polluted.(這些河流中的水已經被污染了)(被動句)

但是, population一詞又有特殊情況: What's the population of China?(中國人口是多少?)(句子用單數) / Three quarters of the population in this city are Arabs(阿拉伯人).(這個城市四分之三的人口是阿拉伯人)(句子用複數)

5、部分名詞用法辨析:

1、sport、game、match、race 的區別: sport通常指“戶外運動”,以鍛煉為主,概念較大; game意思是“運動、比賽”,不管戶內戶外還是腦力體力,指以勝負為主的運動; match意為“競賽、比賽”,多指正式比賽; race主要表示“賽跑、賽馬、賽車”。如: People all around the world enjoy sports.(全世界的人都喜愛運動) / The 2008 Olympic Games will be held in Beijing.(2008奧運會將在北京舉行)(被動句) / Our school football team won the league match(聯賽).(我們學校足球隊取得了聯賽冠軍) / They were strong and won the boat race.(湯他們很棒,贏得了划艇比賽)

2、festival、holiday、vacation的區別: festival“節日”,指喜慶的日子或持續一段時間的文娛活動; holiday(假日、休息日),指法定假日或風俗習慣,複數可以表示一個較長的假期; vacation“假期”,指學習或工作中一段長時間的休息。如: The Shanghai Television Festival will be held next month.(上海電視節將在下個月舉行) / Sunday is a holiday and most people do not work.(星期天是個假日,多數人不工作) / What are you going to do during the summer vacation/holidays?(在暑期你打算做什麼事情?)

3、journey、tour、trip、travel的區別: journey指在陸地上(或海上或空中)進行的長途旅行,不知終點,含有辛苦的意思; tour指途中作短期逗留的巡迴旅行,強調遊覽多處,常用來指觀光等; trip通常指往返定時的短途旅行,如出差度假等; travel多指長期或長途的觀光旅行,尤其指到國外,沒有明確目的地,也作不可數名詞,指旅行這一行為。如: He made up his mind to make the journey to Dunhuang.(他拿定主意要去敦煌旅行) / He has gone on a walking tour.(他步行觀光去了) / He took several trips to Shanghai last year.(去年他去了上海好幾次) / Did you go to Santiago(聖地牙哥) during your travels?(旅行期間你去聖地牙哥了嗎?) / Travelling through thick forests is dangerous.(在密林裡邊穿行是很危險的)

4、sound、noise、voice的區別: sound指各種聲音; noise主要指“噪音”; voice指人的“嗓音”。如: The noise of the street kept me awake in the night.(街上的喧囂聲讓我徹夜難眠) / All of a sudden there was the sound of shots and a cry.(突然間傳來幾聲槍響和一聲尖叫) / The singer has lost her ringing voice as a result of a bad cold.(因為感冒的緣故,這個歌唱家失去了她銀鈴般的嗓音)

5、fish的問題: 指許多條魚且不管種類時,用fish,單複數相同; fishes 指許多種類的魚; fish指“魚肉”時是不可數名詞。如: There are many kinds of fishes in the pool.(池子裡有很多種類的魚) / I prefer fish to meat.(與肉相比我更喜歡魚)

三、代詞:

1、代詞的分類: 英語中代詞分為: 人稱代詞、物主代詞、反身代詞、指示代詞、關係代詞、疑問代詞、連接代詞和不定代詞等等。

2、人稱代詞: 人稱代詞代替人和事物的名稱,分為主格和賓格兩種形式。

1、主格用來作句子的主語、表語。如: I often go shopping on Sundays.(星期天我常

去購物) / Are they from Brazil?(他們是巴西人嗎?) / Where have they gone?(他們上哪兒去了?) / That's it.(就那麼回事) / It's he!(是他!)

2、賓格用來作及物動詞或者介詞的賓語。如: Who teaches you English this year?(今年誰教你們的英語?) / Help me!(救救我!) / We often write letters to her.(我們常給他寫信)

3、人稱代詞作表語或者放在比較狀語從句連詞than或as之後時,可以用主格形式,也可以用賓格形式,口語中大多用賓格。如: --Who is it?(是誰?) --It's I/me.(是我。)

4、三個不同人稱同時出現,或者主語中包含“我”時,按照“you→he→I”的順序表達。如:

Both he and I are working at that computer company.(我和他都在那家電腦公司上班) --Who will go there?(誰要去那兒?) --You and me.(你和我)

5、人稱代詞it除了可以指人指物之外,還可以表示“時間、天氣、溫度、距離、情況”等含義,此外還可以作“非人稱代詞”使用,替代作主語或者賓語的不定式、動名詞或者名詞性從句。如: --What's the weather like today?(今天天氣怎樣?) --It's fine.(天氣晴好) / --What's the time?(幾點啦?) --It's 12:00.(12點) / It's a long way to go.(那可要走好長的路) / It took him three days to clean his house.(打掃屋子花了他三天的時間) / It is very clear that the public want to know when these men can go into space.(很顯然,公眾想知道這些人什麼時候能進入太空) / We found it very difficult to learn a foreign language well.(我們發覺要學好一門外語是非常困難的)

3、物主代詞:說明事物所屬關係的代詞,分為形容詞性和名詞性兩種。

1、形容詞性物主代詞只能作句子中名詞的修飾語,後面要跟名詞。如:

Is that your umbrella?(那是你的傘嗎?) / I often go to see my aunt on Sundays.(我經常在星期天去看望阿姨) / They are their books.(是他們的書)

2、名詞性物主代詞相當於名詞,既代替事物又表明所屬關係,在句子中往往獨立地作主語、賓語或者表語,後面千萬不可以跟名詞。如:

This is your cup, but where is mine?(這是你的杯子,可我的在哪兒?) / Your classroom is very big, but ours is rather small.(你們的教室很大,我們的相當小)

3、“of + 名詞性物主代詞”稱為雙重所有格,作定語時放在名詞的後面。如:

A friend of mine came to see me yesterday.(我的一個朋友昨天來看我了)(指若干朋友中有一個來看我。)

[試比較] My friend came to see me yesterday.(我的朋友昨天來看我了)(指我的那個特定的朋友來看我。)

4、反身代詞:表示謂語的動作與主語有關或者賓語補足語的動作與賓語有關。

反身代詞是一種表示反射或強調的代詞。它的基本含義是:通過反身代詞指代主語,使施動者把動作在形式上反射到施動者自己。因此,反身代詞與它所指代的名詞或代詞形成互指關係,在人稱、性、數上保持一致。

5 1、反身代詞在句子中作賓語表示反射(指一個動作回到該動作執行者本身)。如:

Don't play with the knife, you might hurt yourself.(不要玩刀子,那會割傷你的)

2、在句子中作同位語表示強調(即用來強調名詞或代詞的語氣)。如:

The story itself is good. Only he didn't tell it well.(故事本身是好的,只是他沒有講好)

6、指示代詞:指示說明近處或者遠處、上文或者下文、以前或者現在的人或事物。

單數 複數 含義 this(這個) these(這些) 指較近的人和物 that(那個) those(那些) 指較遠的人和物 such (這樣的人/物) 指上文提過的人和物 same (同樣的人/物) 指和上文提過的相同的人和物 it (這人/這物) 指不太清楚是誰或者是什麼時 指示代詞既可以單獨使用做句子的主語、賓語或表語,也可以作定語修飾名詞。如:  
What's this?(這是什麼?) / That model plane is made of plastic.(那只模型飛機是塑膠做的)(被動句) / Remember never to do such things.(記得永遠不要做這樣的事情) / Do the same as the teacher tells you. (按老師說的做) / ---Who is it?(是誰?)  
---It's me!(是我!)

6、關係代詞:用來引導定語從句的代詞叫關係代詞,參見後面的定語從句。

1、關係代詞who、which、that、whom等,將定語從句和主句連接起來。英語中的關係代詞一方面在從句中擔任一定的成分,另一方面又起連接作用。

如:The student who is drawing a picture is in Grade One.(正在畫畫的學生是一年級的)

2、關係代詞who / whom指人,如果作從句的賓語,則有時省略。如:

Do you know the man who is wearing a red hat? (你認識那個戴著紅帽子的男人嗎?)

3、關係代詞which指物,如果作從句的賓語,則有時省略。如:Have you found the book which you lost several days ago?(你找到幾天前丟失的那本書了嗎?)

4、關係代詞that既可指人也可指物,如果作從句的賓語,則有時省略。如:Can you see the man/dog that is running along the river bank?(你看得見順著河跑的男人/狗了嗎?)

7、連接代詞:用來引導賓語從句、主語從句或表語從句的連接詞稱連接代詞。

英語中連接代詞主要有:what(什麼),who(誰),whom(誰),which(哪個),whose(誰的)。詳見相應從句。

8、不定代詞:代替或修飾不特指的人或事物的代詞叫不定代詞。

單數

含義 some

any no

none // each

(every) one either,

neither so the other,

another 複合不

定代詞 不可數

含義 much little,

a little all // // // 複數

含義 many few,

a few ones both others,

the others ※注:複合不定代詞有12個:something(某事), someone(某人),

somebody(某人), anything

(任何事), anyone(任何人), anybody(任何人), nothing(沒事),nobody(沒有人), no

one(沒有人), everything(一切), everyone(每個人), everybody(每個人)。

(1)some和 any 的用法:

some一般用於肯定句中,意思是“幾個”、“一些”、“某個”作定語時可修飾可數名詞或不可數名詞。如:I have some work to do today. (今天我有些事情要做)/ They will go there some day.(他們有朝一日會去那兒)

some用於疑問句時,表示建議、請求或希望得到肯定回答。如:Would you like some coffee with sugar?(你要加糖的咖啡嗎?)

any 一般用於疑問句或否定句中,意思是“任何一些”、“任何一個”,作定語時可修飾可數或不可數名詞。如: They didn't have any friends here. (他們在這裡沒有朋友)/ Have you got any questions to ask?(你有問題要問嗎?)

any 用於肯定句時,意思是“任何的”。Come here with any friend.(隨便帶什麼朋友來吧。)

(2)no和none的用法:

no是形容詞,只能作定語表示,意思是“沒有”,修飾可數名詞(單數或複數)或不可數名詞。如: There is no time left. Please hurry up.(沒有時間了,請快點) / They had no reading books to lend.(他們沒有閱讀用書可以出借)

none只能獨立使用,在句子中可作主語、賓語和表語,意思是“沒有一個人(或事物)”,表示複數或單數。如: None of them is/are in the classroom.(他們當中沒有一個在教室裡) / I have many books, but none is interesting.(我有很多的書,但沒有一本是有興趣的)

(3)all和both的用法:

all指三者或三者以上的人或物,用來代替或修飾可數名詞;也可用來代替或修飾不可數名詞。

both指兩個人或物,用來代替或修飾可數名詞。all和both在句子中作主語、賓語、表語、定語等。如: I know all of the four British students in their school.(他們學校裡四個英國學生我全認識) / --Would you like this one or that one? --Both.(你要這個還是那個?兩個都要。)

all和both既可以修飾名詞(all/both+(the)+名詞),也可以獨立使用,採用“all/both + of the +名詞(複數)”的形式,其中的of可以省略。如: All (of) (the) boys are naughty.(是男孩都調皮)

(4)every和each用法:

every是形容詞,只能作定語修飾單數名詞,意思是“每一個”,表示整體概念;

each是形容詞、代詞,可用作主語、賓語、定語等,意思是“每個”或者“各個”,表示單個概念;each可以放在名詞前,可以後跟of短語,與動詞同時出現時要放在“be動詞、助動詞、情態動詞”之後或者行為動詞之前

every和each都用作單數理解,但是下文中既可以用單數的代詞(如he/him/his)也可以用複數的代詞(如they/them/their)替代。如: Every one of the students in his class studies very hard.(他班上每個學生學習都很用功) / They are very busy. Each of them has something to do.(他們很忙,人人都有事幹)

(5)either和neither的用法:

either意思是“兩個中間的任何一個”;neither是either的否定形式,意思是“兩個都不”。

neither和either在句子中可作主語、賓語和定語等,都用作單數。如: I don't care much for what to drink. Either of the two will do. (我不介意喝些什麼,兩個之中隨便哪個都行) / --Will you go there by bus or by car? --Neither. I will go there by train.(你坐公車去還是坐轎車去?一個都不坐,我坐火車去。)

(6)other、the other和another的用法:

other意思是“另一”、“另一些”,有複數形式。在句子中可作主語、賓語和定語。

another意思是“另外”、“又一個”,表示增加,在句中可作賓語和定語。如:

Some girls are singing under the big apple tree and others are sitting on the grass talking.(有些女孩在大蘋果樹下唱歌,別的就躺在草地上說話) / You have had several cakes. Do you really want another one?(你已經吃了好幾塊餅子了,你真的還要一塊?) / I want another four books.(我還要四本書)

another(另外的,再一,又一)與the other(另外的一個)主要從數量上區分,只有兩個

時用the other,在原先基礎上增加用another。如: This is one of your socks. Where is the other one?(這是你的一隻襪子,還有一隻呢?) / I have eaten 4 cakes, but I still want another.(我已經吃了4塊蛋糕,但是我還要以塊。)

others與the others的主要區別: others指“剩餘的人/物”(指大部分); the others指“其餘的人/物”,(指全部)。如: A few students are playing soccer while others are watching them.(有幾個學生在踢足球,其他一些人在觀看) / Two of the ten boys are standing and the others are sitting round them.(十個男孩中有兩個站著,其他人都圍著他們坐著。)

(7)many和much的用法:

many意思是“很多”,與可數名詞複數連用; much意思是“很多”,與不可數名詞連用。它們在句中可作主語、賓語和定語等。如: I don't have many friends here.(在這裡我沒有很多的朋友。) / Many died in the bus accident.(許多人在公車禍中喪失) / We can learn much with the help of him.(在他的幫助之下我們能學到很多)

many和much一般用於否定句,肯定句中通常用a lot of 或者lots of; many / much用於肯定句時可以在前面加上so、very或too。如: There are a lot of people on the playground.(操場上有許多的人) / They haven't got much work to do.(他們沒有多少事情可做) / There are too many people in the room.(房間裡人太多了。)

(8)few、little、a few、a little的用法:

few、little意思是“很少幾個”、“幾乎沒有”,有否定的意思,a few、a little意思是“有幾個”、“有些”,有肯定的意思; few、a few與可數名詞連用或代替可數的事物, little、a little與不可數名詞連用或代替不可數的事物。它們在句中可作主語、賓語和定語。如:

He is very poor and he has little money.(他很窮,幾乎沒有什麼錢。) / Don't worry. There is still a little time left.(別著急,還有一點兒時間呢。) / In that polar region there live few people.(在那個極地地區幾乎不住人) / You can get a few sweets from him.(你可以從他那兒弄到一些糖果)

(9)複合不定代詞somebody, something, anything, nothing, everything, everybody等是由some, any, no, every, 加上body, thing 構成的,叫做複合不定代詞,在句子中當單數使用。

somebody, something, someone 一般用於肯定句中; anything, anybody, anyone 一般用於疑問句、否定句和條件狀語從句中。修飾複合不定代詞的定語,應放在它們的後面。如: Hey, Lily. There is someone outside the door.(嗨, 麗麗, 門外有人。) / Did (每個人) you meet anyone when you came to school last Sunday?(上個星期天你來學校時見到什麼人了嗎?) / He has nothing much to do today.(他今天沒有多少事情做)

(10)one與ones用來代替上文的一個或多個人或事物,前面可以加冠詞、形容詞、指示代詞、which等。如: Which jacket would you like, this one or that one?(你要哪件夾克,這件還是那件?) / I don't like the green ones.(我不喜歡綠色的那些)

(11)so可以代替一件事情,作句子的賓語或表語。如: I don't think so.(我認為不是這樣的。) / He lost a book. So did I.(他丟失了一本書,我也是。)

(12)a lot of、lots of、a number of ( / large numbers of)、a great deal of、plenty of的區別: 五個“名詞+介詞”短語都表示“大量,許多”,a lot of(或lots of)既可以修飾不可數名詞也可以修飾可數名詞的複數形式,可以相應地換為much和many; plenty of“足夠、大量”,既可以修飾不可數名詞也可以修飾可數名詞的複數形式。a number of / large numbers of只可以修飾可數名詞複數形式(它修飾的詞作主語時謂語用複數形式)可以換為some、many、a lot of、plenty of。a great deal of只可以修飾不可數名詞(它修飾的詞作主語時謂語用單數形式)可以換為much。

如: A lot of people think that time is money.(許多的人認為時間就是金錢。) / I don't

have to do it in a hurry because I have plenty of time.(我用不著趕忙,因為我有充足的時間。)/ I have a number of letters to write today.(今天我有好多信要寫)/ I spend a great deal of time/money on shopping.(在購物方面我花費了大量的時間/金錢。)

(13)none、no one、nobody的區別: no one和nobody都表示“沒有人”,僅指人,後面不跟of短語,作主語時謂語用單數形式; none表示“沒有一個人/物”,可指人也可以指物,後面可跟of短語,作主語時謂語可用單數也可用複數。如: No one knows how he managed to get the ticket.(沒有人知道他是怎樣搞到那張票的)/ Nobody handed in his/their composition(s) yesterday.(昨天沒有一個人交作文。)/ None of my friends came to see me that day.(那天沒有一個朋友來看我。)

9、相互代詞:表示相互關係的詞叫相互代詞。

each other, one another是相互代詞,譯成“互相”,可以通用。each other表示兩者之間,而one another表示許多人之間。它們有所有格形式each other's, one another's。如: We must help each other when we are in trouble.(我們身處困境時要互相幫助。)/ They sat there without talking to one another / each other.(他們坐在那兒,互相都不說話。)

10、疑問代詞:用來提出問題的代詞稱為疑問代詞。

1、who、whom、whose、what、which、whoever、whatever、whichever主要用於特殊疑問句中,一般放在句首。口語中也常用who代替whom作賓語,但在介詞後則只能用whom。如:

Who(m) did you invite to your birthday party?(你都邀請了誰參加你的生日聚會的?)/ What does she want to be when she grows up?(她長大了想幹什麼?)

2、who和whom只能獨立使用,其中who可以作句子的主語、表語或動詞的賓語,whom只能作謂語動詞的賓語;而what、which、whose等既可以獨立使用作主語、表語和賓語,也可以與名詞構成疑問短語。如: Who is that man?(那男的是誰?)/ What colour are their hats?(他們的帽子是什麼顏色?)/ Which car was made in Germany?(哪輛車是德國造的?)(被動句)

注意這個提問:The man in the car is my father.(車裡的男人是我父親)

→Which man is your father?(哪個男人是你的父親?)

3、which除了可以詢問指代的情況之外,還可以針對說明人物的時間、地點、歲數、顏色、大小、狀況等進行提問。如: People there live a very sad life.(那裡的人生生活淒慘) →Which people live a sad life?(哪些人生活淒慘?)/ --Which hotel have you booked for your holiday?(為了度假你預訂了哪家旅館?)—The biggest one in Haikou.(海口最大的那家旅館)

4、疑問代詞不分單複數,視它所替代的人或事物決定單複數,但是通常用單數;如果修飾名詞,則以名詞的單複數為準。如: Who is (are) in that playhouse?(誰在遊戲房裡?)/ What is that?(那是什麼?)/ What are those?(那些是什麼?)/ What colours do they have?(它們有哪些顏色?)

初一代詞練習:

1.— Judy, is this \_\_\_\_\_ mobile phone or Helen's?

— It's \_\_\_\_\_.

A. your, mine B. your, my C. you, mine D. you, my

四、數詞:

1、分類:數詞有基數詞和序數詞兩種。英語的數詞可以作句子的主語、賓語、表語和定語。

2、基數詞:表示數目的詞叫基數詞。



1、英語中常用的基數詞有：

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12 one

two

three

four

five

six

seven

eight

nine

ten

eleven

twelve

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

thirteen

fourteen

fifteen

sixteen

seventeen

eighteen

nineteen

20

30

40

50

60

70

80  
90  
100twenty  
thirty  
forty  
fifty  
sixty  
seventy  
eighty  
ninety  
one(a) hundred

23

35

101

twenty-three

thirty-five

one hundred and one

1000→one(a) thousand,10000→ ten thousand,100000→one hundred thousand ,1000000→one million,10000000→ten million, 100000000→one hundred million, 108→one hundred and eight, 146→one hundred and forty-six, 500→five hundred , 1001→one thousand and one, 1813→one thousand eight hundred and thirteen.

2、[注]:(1)百位與十位之間要加and;十萬位和萬位,億位和千萬位之間通常也要加and。

(2)英語用千、百萬等單位元數目,大數字從右向左看,每隔三位劃一逗號,倒數第一個逗號之前要用thousand,倒數第二個逗號之前要用million,倒數第三的逗號之前要用billion表示。

(3) hundred、thousand、million作數詞時,不用複數,前面可以加上one, two, ...等其它數詞。用作名詞時複數表示“成...上...”,後面必須要有of,前面可以加上some,many,several等詞。如:five hundred(五百), hundreds of(成百上千的), ten thousand(一萬), thousands of(成千上萬的), millions of(成百萬的)

3、序數詞:表示順序的數詞叫序數詞。

1、英語的序數詞基本變法:

(1)一般在基數詞後加th,(2)-ve結尾的改為-fth,(3)-ty結尾的改為-tieth,(4)熟記特殊

詞。

2、序數詞如下：

1st

2nd

3rd

4th

5th

6th

7th

8th

9th

10th

11th

12th ✕first

✕second

✕third

fourth

fifth

sixth

seventh

eighth

ninth

tenth

eleventh

twelfth

13th

14th

15th

16th

17th

18th

19th

thirteenth

fourteenth

fifteenth

sixteenth

seventeenth

eighteenth

nineteenth

20th

30th

40th

50th

60th

70th  
80th  
90th  
100th  
twentieth  
thirtieth  
fortieth  
fiftieth  
sixtieth  
seventieth  
eightieth  
ninetieth  
one hundredth  
21st  
22nd  
23rd  
  
35th

101st  
twenty-first  
twenty-second  
twenty-third  
  
thirty-fifth

one hundred and first

1000th→one thousandth, 1000000th →one millionth., 第703→the seven hundred and third,

第5480→the five thousand four hundred and eightieth.

3、注:(1)兩位以上的序數詞僅個位數部分用序數詞,其餘部分仍用基數詞。如: thirty-sixth,

(2) 使用序數詞時一般加定冠詞the。如: I'm in the third grade.

(3) 序數詞作“幾分之幾”講時,有複數形式。如: 1/5→one fifth ; 2/3→ two thirds ; 4/7→ four sevenths ; 1/2→ a half ; 1/4→a quarter ; 3/4→ three quarters ; 50%→ fifty hundredths ( fifty per cent).

4、數詞的用法:

1、表示年份: 2002: twenty thousand and two ; 1976 : nineteen seventy-six.

2、表示日期: 12月1日: Dec.1st或the first of December; 2002年11月8日: Nov. 8th, 2002.

3、表示時刻：5:15→ five fifteen或a quarter past five；8:30→ eight thirty或half past eight；10:45→ ten forty-five或a quarter to eleven.

4、表示編號：Room 105→Room one 0 five；Bus No.13→Bus Number Thirteen；P.5→Page Five；Tel.No.7658659→Telephone Number seven-six-five-eight-six-five-nine

5、小數的讀法：5.7→ five point seven, 0.16 →zero point one six.

6、“半”的表達：1/2→half, 半小時→half an hour, 1.5小時→one and a half hours或one hour and a half.

7、序數詞前面加the時,表示順序,加a/an時表示“再一、又一”。如：The third lesson is rather difficult.(第三課相當難)/ Shall we read the text a third time?(我們把課文讀第三遍,好嗎?)

## 五、冠詞

### 1、冠詞分類及讀法：

英語中冠詞有不定冠詞和定冠詞兩種,常放在名詞的前面,用來限定名詞的意義,起泛指或特指的作用。定冠詞the讀法：單獨念時讀[Ti:]，在句子中常發[Ti] (母音之前)或者[T](輔音之前)；

不定冠詞a/an的讀法：單獨念時讀 [ei]/[An]；在句子中常發 [i]/[n]。

### 2、不定冠詞a / an的用法：

不定冠詞a / an用在單數名詞的前面,a用在輔音開頭的詞前面；an用在母音開頭的詞的前面。

不定冠詞的基本用法：

(1) 表示某一個人或東西,但不具體說明何人或何物。如：There is a dog lying on the ground.(有一隻狗躺在地上。)

(2) 表示某類人或事物,以區別於其他種類。如：A elephant is much stronger than a man.(大象比人強壯多了。)(不能譯為：一頭大象比一個人強壯。)

(2) 表示某類人或事物中的任何一個。如：He is a teacher of English.(他是英語教師。)

(4) 表示“一”這個數量。如：There is a table and four chairs in that dining-room.(在那個餐廳裡有一張桌子和四把椅子。)

(5) 幾個用不定冠詞的習語：a bit(一點), a little(一點), a few(幾個), a lot (許多), a kind of(一種), a pair of(一副、一雙), a number of(大量的), a piece of (一張、一片), half an hour(半小時), have a good time(玩得開心), have a cold(感冒), make a noise(發出嘈雜聲), have/take a (rest等)(休息)一會兒,等等。

3、定冠詞the的用法：定冠詞the用在可數名詞的單數或複數或不可數的名詞前面。

定冠詞的基本用法：

(1) 表示特指的人或事物。如：The man with a flower in his hand is Jack..(手上拿著一朵花的男人是傑克)

(2) 指談話雙方都熟悉的人或事物。如：Look at the blackboard,Lily.(莉莉,請看黑板。)

(3) 複述前面提到過的人或事物。如：There is a man under the tree. The man is called Robert.(樹下有個人, 那個人叫羅伯特。)

(4) 表示世界上獨一無二的事物。如：The earth turns around the sun.(地球繞太陽旋轉。)

(5) 用在表示方位的名詞前面。如：There will be strong wind to the south of the Yangtze River.(長江以南地區將會刮大風。)

(6) 在序數詞和形容詞最高級的前面。如：Who is the first one to go?(誰第一個)

去?) / Of all the stars, the sun is the nearest to the earth.(在所有的恒星之中太陽離地球最近)

(7) 常用在樂器名稱的前面。如: He began to play the violin at the age of 5.(五歲時他開始拉小提琴)

(8) 用在江河、海洋、山脈等名稱的前面。如: I have never been to the Himalaya Mountains.(我從來沒有去過喜馬拉雅山)

(9) 用在含有普通名詞的專有名詞的前面。如: He is from the United States of America.(他來自美利堅合眾國)

(10) 用在姓氏之前表示一家人。如: The Greens are going to Mount Emei next month.(下個月格林一家要去峨眉山)

(11) same之前一般用the。如: Lucy and Lily look the same.(露西和莉莉看上去長得一樣)

(12) 幾個用定冠詞的習語: at the same time (與此同時), make the bed(鋪床), in the end(最後), all the time(一直), by the way(順便說一下), on the way(在路上)等等。

#### 4、一些不用冠詞的情況:

(1) 專有名詞和(第一次使用)一些不可數名詞時前面通常不用。如: China is a very large country.(中國是個大國) / Man needs air and water.(人類需要空氣和水)

(2) 名詞前已有指示、物主或不定代詞作定語時不用。如: My pen is much more expensive than yours.(我的鋼筆比你的昂貴多了)

(3) 周名, 月名或季節名前一般不用。如: He was born on Monday, February 18, 1995.(他出生在1995年二月十八日, 星期一) / They usually plant trees on the hills in spring.(春天他們通常在山上植樹)

(4) (第一次使用)複數名詞表示人或事物的類別時不用。如: Men are cleverer than monkeys.(人比猴子聰明)

(5) 三餐飯前不用。如: We have breakfast at home and lunch at school.(我們在家吃早飯, 在校吃午飯)

(6) 節、假日前一般不用。如: On Children's Day the boys often get presents from their parents.(在兒童節, 這些男孩經常得到父母的禮物)

(7) 球類名詞前不用。如: The children play football on Saturday afternoons.(孩子們星期六下午踢足球)

(8) 城市的重要/主要建築物名稱前不用。如: They are now at People's Cinema.(他們此刻在人民電影院)

(9) 一些習慣用語中不用。如: (1) at / to / from / out of / after / for school; (2) in / to / for / after class; (3) in / to / out of / into bed; (4) after / at / from / out of / to work; (5) at / to sea; (6) in / from / down / to town; (7) at / from home; (8) at / for / to breakfast/lunch/supper; (9) at night/noon/midnight; (10) on foot; (11) go to school/bed; (12) on top of; (13) in front of; (14) on show/display/duty/watch; (15) in / out of hospital; (16) at all; (17) on/in time; (18) at first/last/once; (19) in Chinese/English, etc.; (20) take care of

#### 六、形容詞、副詞:

1、形容詞: 用來說明或修飾名詞、代詞的詞稱為形容詞。

1、形容詞的句法作用: 作句子中名詞的定語、句子的表語以及賓語補足語。

2、形容詞在句子中的位置:

(1) 作定語時放在名詞的前面, 且音節少的詞放在音節多的詞之前。如: a big yellow wooden wheel(一個黃色的大木輪)

(2) 作表語時放在連系動詞之後。如: The price sounds reasonable.(這個價格聽起來算是合理)

(3)作賓語補足語時放在賓語之後。如：We must try our best to keep our environment clean.(我們必須盡力保持我們的環境清潔)

(4)後置的情況：

①修飾複合不定代詞時放在代詞之後。如：Something serious has happened to him.(他發生了嚴重的事故)

②與表示“長、寬、高、重、老、遠離”的詞連用時形容詞後置。如：He's 1.8 metres tall.(他身高1.8米。)The moon is about 380,000 kilometres away from the earth.(月球離地38萬公里)

3、有關形容詞的用法辨析：

(1) whole與all：記住兩個詞序：① the whole + 名詞；② all (of) the + 名詞。如：He was busy the whole morning.(整個早晨他都很忙) / He can remember all the words he learns.(他能記住學過的所有單詞)

(2) tall與high, short與low：指人的個子時用tall與short；指其他事物時一般用high與low。如：He's very tall/short.(他個子高/矮) / Tall trees are standing on both sides of that avenue.(大道的兩側有高大的樹木) / A few people live on high mountains.(少量的人住在高山上)

(3) real與true：real一般指東西的真假，譯為“真的”；而true則指事情或消息的可靠性，譯為“真實的”。如：This is a real diamond(鑽石) and it's very expensive.(這是貨真價實的鑽石，非常貴) / --Is that true?—Yes. I heard it with my own ears.(那真實嗎？是的，我親耳所聽)

(4) interested與interesting的區別：interesting指人或東西“有趣的”，作定語或表語，而interested則表示人對別的事物“感興趣的”，只能作表語。如：The man is very interesting and all the children like him.(這個人很有趣，孩子們都喜歡他) / This book is interesting and you can really enjoy yourself.(這本書很有趣，你會真正獲得享受) / I am interested in science.(我對自然科學感興趣)

(5) such用法：such + a(n) + 名詞(單數)(+that從句)。如：I have never seen such a foolish(愚蠢的) boy.(我從來沒有見過這麼蠢的男孩) / He had such a terrible accident that he could never forget it.(他遭遇了這麼可怕的事，他永遠也不會忘記)

(6) good與well：表示“好”時，作定語或表語用good，作狀語用well；表示“(身體)好”時用well。如：Doing sports is good for us.(進行運動對我們有益) / Study well and make progress every day.(好好學習，天天向上) / --How are you?—I am very well.(你好嗎？我很好。)

(7) nice與fine：的區別：nice表示令人愉快的，可以指東西、人物外表等；fine一般指身體或天氣好。如：Let's go and share(分享) the nice cake.(我們去分享那塊美味的蛋糕吧) / She is a nice girl.(他是個漂亮的姑娘) / What a fine day!(多好的天氣！) / He's fine recently(最近).(近來他身體不錯)

(8) too much與much too：too much表示“太多的”，修飾事物數量；much too表示“太過，過分”，修飾形容詞或副詞。如：I am full because I have had too much rice.(我飽了，因為我吃了太多的米飯) / That coat is much too dear.(那件大衣太貴了)

(9) quick、fast與soon：quick與fast基本同義，quick往往指反應速度快，fast往往指運動速度快，而soon則表示時間上很快即將發生。如：After a quick breakfast, he hurried to school leaving his bag at home.(匆匆地吃過早飯，他朝學校趕去，卻把書包忘記在家) / A train is much faster than a bus.(火車比公共汽車快得多) / His father will be back to China very soon.(他父親很快就要返回中國)

(10) lonely與alone：lonely是表示心理活動的形容詞，意思是：“孤獨的，寂寞的”，作定語或表語；alone的意思是：“獨自的，單獨的”，指無人陪伴，僅作表語，(作為副詞的

alone可作狀語)。如：He lives alone but he doesn't feel lonely.(他一人獨住,但是並不感到孤獨)/ He is a lonely person. You can not easily get on well with him.(他是個孤獨的人,你要和他相處好實在不易)

(11) other與else的區別：兩個詞都可以作形容詞,但是用法不同,other放在名詞前; else修飾不定代詞、疑問詞、little、much,後置,另外,or else表示“否則”,是連詞。如：The other students are on the playground.(其他學生在操場上) / Who else can work out this maths problem?(還有誰能解出著道數學題?) / This is nobody else's money. It's mine.(這不是別的什麼人的錢,是我的。) / Do you have anything else to say for yourself?(你還有什麼要為自己說的嗎?)

(12) special與especial的區別：表示事件不同尋常、過分或特殊時,兩個詞可互換,但special較為常用。另外,special還可以表示特別的目的。如：She pays (e)special attention to clothes.(她非常注重著裝) / These are special chairs for small children.(這些是專門給小孩子的椅子)

(13) gone、lost、missing的區別：gone表示“丟了,沒了”,含一去不復返的意思,也可以表示“死了”,作表語或賓補,不可以作定語; lost表示“丟失”,含難以找回的意思,可作定語、表語或賓補; missing表示“失蹤了,不見了”,強調某人物不在原處,可作定語、表語或賓補。如：My fever(高燒) is gone, but I still have a cough.(發燒消退了,但我仍然咳嗽) / The parents found the lost child at last.(家長終於找到了迷路的孩子) / My dictionary is missing.Who's taken it away?(我的字典不見了,誰拿走了?) / For more detailed information(詳情) of the missing girls, please visit our website(網址).(如果想知道失蹤女孩們的詳情,請訪問我們的網站)

(14) living、alive、live、lively的區別：四個詞都來源於動詞live“生活、居住”。living讀[ˈliviŋ]有三個意思：①“活著的、現存的”,作表語或定語,②“一模一樣的、逼真的”,③相當於lively,意思是“強烈的、活潑的”; live讀[laɪv],指東西“活的”,可以替換為living; alive讀[əˈlaɪv]作表語,指人“活著的”,如果作定語,則放在名詞的後面; lively讀[ˈlaɪvli]有三個意思：①有生氣的、活潑的、快活的,②(色彩)鮮豔的,③生動的、真實的。

例如：A living language should be learned orally(口頭上).(活的語言應該從口頭上學)(被動句) / We have a living hope that you will succeed.(我們強烈地希望你成功) / Is she still alive?(她還活著嗎?) / They are the happiest children alive.(他們是活著的最開心的孩子) / This is a live fish.(這是條活魚) / A live wire(電線) is dangerous.(有電的電線是危險的) / She is as lively as a kitten(小貓).(她像小貓一樣可愛) / He gave a lively description of the football match.(他生動地描述了那場足球賽)

(15) sick與ill區別：sick和ill都表示“生病的”,但是,sick可以做定語、表語,而ill只能做表語。如：He has been ill/sick for a long time and he is very weak now.(他病了很久,現在非常虛弱) / Vets help treat sick pets and most of the pets' owners like them.(獸醫幫助診治患病的寵物,很受寵物主人們的喜愛)

(16) the poor(窮人們) / the rich(富人們)等用法：“the+形容詞”這一結構可以表示一類人物,複數含義。如：We must try our best to help the poor.(我們應該盡力幫助窮人們) / The rich never know how the poor are living.(有錢人哪知窮人怎麼過日子)

2、副詞：用來說明事情發生的時間、地點、原因、方式等含義或說明其它形容詞或副詞程度的詞叫做副詞。

1、副詞的分類:(見下表)

時間副詞 頻度副詞 地點/方位副詞 程度副詞 方式副詞 疑問/連接副詞 其他副詞  
today, tomorrow, once, here, there, very, too, well, how, too, also, yesterday, now,



twice, home, below, enough, hard, where, nor, so, then, early, late, always, anywhere, rather, quite, alone, when, as, on/off, once, soon, just, usually, above, outside, how, so, fast, why, either, tonight, long, often, in, inside, out, much, just, together, whether yes, no, already, yet, before, sometimes, back, up, down, nearly, only suddenly, however, etc. not, neither ago, later, ever since never, away, off, far, almost, hardly, -ly結尾 關係副詞 maybe, after, whenever (seldom), near, nearby, as long as等, 的副詞 where, perhaps, first, someday, ever, wherever even, all, why, how certainly, sometime, last, everywhere, a little, a bit when, 2、副詞在句子中的位置以及作用:

(1)作狀語:

① 時間副詞:一般放在句首或句尾,注意,early、late、before、later、yet等一般放在句尾,already、just一般放在動詞的前面。如:We will visit the Great Wall tomorrow.(我們明天要去參觀長城) / They have already been to the UK twice.(他們去過英王國兩次) / Soon the lost boy found his way back home.(不久迷路的孩子找到了回家的路)

② 頻度副詞:一般放在be動詞之後或者助動詞與主要動詞之間,但sometimes、often等還可以放在句首或句尾,usually可放在句首,once可放在句尾,twice、three times等一般放在句尾。如:Sometimes I get up early.(我有時起得早) / The workers usually have lunch at the factory.(工人們通常在廠裡吃午飯) / Take this medicine twice a day.(這種藥一天吃兩次)

③ 方式副詞:一般放在行為動之後,suddenly可以放在句首、句尾或動詞之前。如:Old people can hardly walk as quickly as young people.(老年人幾乎不可能走得和年輕人一樣快) / Suddenly he saw a light in the dark cave(山洞).(突然,在黑黢黢的山洞裡,他看見了一絲亮光)

④ 地點副詞:一般放在句尾,但here、there還可放在句首。如:There you can see thousands of bikes running in all directions(方向).(在那裡,你可以看到成千上萬的自行車朝各個方向流動) / The frightened wolf ran away.(受到驚嚇的狼逃開了) / He walked out quietly and turned back soon.(他悄悄地走了出去,很快又返回)

⑤ 程度副詞:修飾動詞時,放在動詞之前;修飾形容詞或副詞時,放在形容詞或副詞之前。但注意,enough總是放在被修飾的形容詞或動詞的後面;only位置比較靈活,總是放在被修飾的詞的前面。如:I nearly forgot all about it if he did not tell me again.(如果他不再次告訴我,我幾乎把那事全忘了) / It was so strange that I could hardly believe my ears.(它那麼奇怪一直我都不能相信我的耳朵) / She got to the station early enough to catch the first bus.(她早早地趕到車站趕上了首班車)

⑥ 疑問副詞:用於對句子的狀語進行提問,位置總是在句首。如:When and where were you born?(你何時何地出生?) / Why did little Edison sit on some eggs?(小愛迪生為什麼要坐在雞蛋上?) / How do you do?(你好!)

⑦ 連接副詞:用來引導主語從句、賓語從句和表語從句,在從句中作狀語。How I am going to kill the cat is still a question.(我打算怎樣殺死那只貓還是個問題) / That is why everyone is afraid of the tiger.(那就是人人都害怕老虎的原因) / He wondered how he could do it the next day.(他不知道第二天怎樣做那事)

⑧ 關係副詞:用來引導定語從句,在從句中作狀語。如:This is the place where Mr Zhang once lived.(這就是張先生曾經住過的地方) / Please tell me the way how you have learned English so well.(請告訴我你的英語是怎樣學得這麼好的方法)

⑨ 其它副詞:too“也”,用在句尾;also放在動詞前;either“也不”,放在句尾;nor“也不”,放在句首;so“如此,這樣”,放在形容詞、副詞前;on/off“開/關”放在動詞之後;not放在be之後、助動詞之後、不定式或動名詞之前;maybe/perhaps放在句首;

certainly放在句首或動詞之前。如：He went to the Palace Museum and I went there,too.(他去了故宮博物院,我也去了) / Maybe your ticket is in your inside pocket.(也許你的票就在你的裡邊衣袋裡) / --Tom doesn't have a computer. --Nor do I.(湯姆沒有電腦,我也沒有。)

(2)作表語：地點副詞一般可以作表語,放在be等連系動詞之後,說明人物所處的位置。如：I'm very sorry he isn't in at the moment.(很抱歉,他此刻不在家) / I have been away from my hometown for nearly 20 years.(我離開家鄉有將近20年了) / Jim is over there.(吉姆就在那邊)

(3)作定語：時間副詞(如now、then)以及許多地點副詞都可以作名詞的定語,放在名詞的後面。如：People now often have their festival dinners at restaurants.(現在的人們經常在餐館裡吃節日晚宴) / Women there were living a terrible life in the 1920s.(在二十世紀20年代那兒的女人過著可怕的日子)

(4)作賓語補足語：地點副詞一般可以作賓語補足語。如：Put your dirty socks away, Jim! They are giving out bad smell!(吉姆,把你的髒襪子拿開!它們在散發著臭氣。) / Father kept him in and doing his lessons.(父親把他關在家裡做作業)

[注意]“動詞+副詞”的賓語如果是代詞,則該副詞應該放在代詞之後。如：He wrote down the word.(他寫下了那個詞。)->He wrote it down.(他把它寫了下來。)

### 3、有關副詞的重要注釋：

(1) as...as...常構成一些片語：as soon as...(一旦...就...), as well as...(同樣), as+形容詞/副詞+as possible(盡可能.....地)。如：Please ring me up as soon as you get to Beijing.(請你一到北京就給我寫信。)/ Miss Gao hurried to the school gate as quickly as possible.(高小姐儘快地趕到了校門口。)

[注釋]“as long / much as + 名詞”可以表示“長達/多達...”的含義。如：The house costs as much as five hundred thousand yuan.(那幢房子花費高達50萬元。)/ They stayed in the cave(山洞)as long as two weeks.(他們呆在山洞裡長達兩周。)

(2) later、after、ago、before的用法：①“一段時間+later/ago”分別表示“(多久)以後/以前”,主要用於過去時態。②“after/before+某個時刻”分別表示“在某時刻之後/之前”,此時兩個詞是介詞。③ago與before: ago只能用於過去時,before用於完成時。如：He had an accident a week ago.(一周前出了一個事故)/ Some years later, the boy became a very famous singer.(數年後這個男孩成了著名的歌唱家)/ Have you been there before?(你從前到過那兒嗎?)/ After a few years he gave up smoking.(過了幾年他戒了煙。)

(3) above、below、over、under的用法：在上下方用above和below,在高低處用over和under。如：The stars are high above in the sky.(星星高掛在空中) / A plane flew over quickly.(一架飛機從頭頂飛過。)

當above、below、over、under是介詞性質時,意義相似。

(4) too、also、either、nor的用法：too(“也”)用於肯定句和疑問句的末尾,且用逗號隔開;also(“也”)用於肯定句句謂語動詞之前;either(“也”)用於否定句末尾,也用逗號隔開;nor(“也不”)用於倒裝句句首;如：Are you American,too?(你也是美國人嗎?)/ He is not happy and I am not happy, either.(他不愉快,我也不。)/ He didn't watch the football game. Nor did I.(他沒有看足球賽,我也沒有。)/ You can also find the market is very good.(你還可以發覺那個市場很好。)

(5) enough、too、so、very、quite、very much的用法：enough(“足夠,十分”)放在形容詞或副詞之後;too(“太”)、very(“非常”)、quite(“相當”)、so(“如此地”)等放在形容詞或副詞之前,very much(“非常”)放在動詞之後。如：It's too/so/very/quite expensive.(它太貴/那麼貴/非常貴/相當貴。)/ I don't like sweets very much.(我不很喜歡糖果)

[注意] very與 much的區別: very修飾形容詞、副詞的原級和現在分詞形容詞, much修飾形容詞和副詞的比較級; much還可以修飾疑問句和否定句中的動詞, very不可以。如: He is very stupid.(他很笨)/ The film was very moving and everyone swept.(電影非常動人,大家都哭了)/ You must work much harder or you will fail to enter the good school.(你得學習更努力,不然你考不進那所好學校)/ I don't like him much.(我不太喜歡他)

(6) sometimes、sometime、some times、some time的用法: sometimes(有時)用於一般現在時、sometime(在將來某時)用於將來時、some times(數次)表示次數、some time(一些時間)表示一段時間。如: Sometimes they go hiking in the mountains.(他們有時徒步旅行到山裡去)/ I will stay here some time.(我會在這兒呆些時候的。)/ I will meet your father sometime.(我什麼時候要見見你的父親。)

(7) how、what用於感歎句的用法: 對句子中的形容詞或副詞感歎時用how, 對人或事物(可能含有形容詞作修飾語)進行感歎用what。如: What a fine day (it is) today!(今天天氣真好!) / How difficult (the problem is)!((問題)真難呀!)

(8) already、yet的用法: 在完成時中,already一般用於肯定句,yet一般用於否定句和疑問句。如: Have you done it already?(你已經做好了?) / I have not had my breakfast yet.(我還沒有吃早飯呢。)

(9) hard與hardly的用法: hard作為副詞意思是:“努力地,猛烈地”,hardly是否定詞,意思是:“幾乎不”,一般與情態動詞can/could連用。如: They study English very hard.(他們英語學得很刻苦)/ You can hardly see a person spit in a public place.(在公共場所你幾乎看不到一個人隨地吐痰)

(10) like...very much、like...better(=prefer)、like...best的用法: 三個短語分別表示“非常喜歡”、“更喜歡”、“最喜歡”。如: I like baseball very much.(我非常喜歡棒球)/ Do you like butter better than cheese?( / They like hamburgers best.

(11) “quite/what+a+形容詞+名詞”的用法: 記住: ①quite/such/what...+a+形容詞+名詞; ②too/so/how+形容詞+a+名詞; ③rather+a+形容詞+名詞 = a+ rather+形容詞+名詞。如: I have never seen such a strange guy(傢伙).(我從未見過這樣奇怪的傢伙) / It is quite a nice day for a walk.(這真是散步的好日子)

(12) how的幾個短語: how often“多常,每隔多久”,用於一般時態,對表示頻度的詞語進行提問; how soon“多久以後”,用於將來時態; how long“多久”,用於過去時、完成時或其他時態; how many times“多少次”,用於過去時或完成時,對總計次數進行提問; how much“多麼,多少”,對程度進行提問,也可以對數量(不可數)或金錢進行提問。如: How long have you been like this?(你這樣已經多久了?) / How often does he wash his face?(他每隔多久洗一次臉?)

(13) much、more與most的用法: 這三個詞除了是形容詞作名詞的修飾語之外,還是程度副詞,much表示“很”,修飾原級形/副,more表示“更”用來構成多音節形/副的比較級,most表示“最”用來構成多音節形/副的最高級。此外,much也可以修飾比較級形/副。如: This park is much more beautiful than that one.(這個公園比那個漂亮多了)/ It is the most instructive film I have ever seen.(這是我看過的最有教育意義的電影)

(14) no more、no longer、not...any more、no...any longer的用法: 表示時間,可以用no longer、not...any more、no...any longer,而且no longer只能放在謂語動詞之前; 表示程度,可以用no more、not...any more。如: He no longer lived there.(他不再住在那裡) / Tom wanted no more cakes.(他不再要蛋糕) / He didn't smoke any more/longer.(他不再抽煙)

(15) 被動語態中,方式副詞一般放在be與謂語動詞之間。如: The runner was badly hurt.(賽跑運動員受了重傷) / English is widely spoken in the world today.(如今世界

上英語說得很廣泛)

(16) too...to...與so...that...的問題:副詞too/so後面跟形容詞或副詞,to後面跟動詞,that後面跟從句。Too...to... (“太.....以致不.....”)是否定的結構,用於簡單句;so...that... (“如此...以致...”)是肯定結構,用於複合句。如:The child is too young to join the army.(這孩子年齡太小還不能參軍)/ He is so strong that he can lift the heavy box.(他這麼強壯,搬得動那個重箱子。)

(17) 既是形容詞也是副詞的單詞有:early, late, long, last, next, first, near, enough, much, all, hard, alone, fast, slow, high, low, straight等等。如:It was a long holiday.(那是個長假)/ He stayed there very long.(他在那兒呆了好久)/ Think hard then you will find a way.(好好想你就會找到辦法)/ He is a very hard(難對付的) person.(他是個難玩的傢伙)

(18) farther與further的用法區別:表示地點、方向或距離時兩個詞同義,意思為“更遠、較遠”,但是further還表示“更多、進一步、額外”等意思,此時不能換為farther。如:They decided to go farther/further the next day.(他們決定第二天走得再遠些)/ This problem will be further discussed.(這個問題還要進一步討論)/ Every one of them had their further studies after they left college.(他們每個人大學畢業後繼續進修)

(19) rather與quite的用法區別:同very一樣,兩個詞都表示形容詞或副詞的程度,quite表示“不到最高程度但是比預料的好”,rather比quite更接近very的含義,含有令人驚訝的意思。見下圖對“nice”程度的描繪:

not nice      (fairly) nice      quite nice      rather nice      very nice

如:It's quite a nice film.(這是部好片子)。(可能意味著不是一部最好的電影) / It's rather a nice film.(這是部很不錯的電影)。(意味著比大多數電影都好)

[注意]注意quite與rather後面的次序詞序。

(20) maybe、possibly、perhaps的區別:maybe“可能、也許”,比另外兩個詞更不正式、更隨便、可能性不大;possibly“可能地、或者、也許”,可能性較大,在否定句和疑問句中表示“無論如何”;perhaps“可能”,較為常用而且正式,可能性也不大。如:You could put it over there,maybe.(也許你可以把它放在那邊) / I couldn't possibly have finished such a long book in such a short time.(我不可能在這麼短的時間內完成這麼長的一本書)/ I thought perhaps it was the letter you have been expecting.(我以為那也許就是你期盼的信件)

(21) most、mostly的區別:most作為形容詞和名詞時意思是“大多數的、大部分的”,作為副詞時意思為“最,十分、很”;mostly僅為副詞,意思為“主要地、多半地、大部分地”。如:I was at home most of the time when I was free.(我有空時大部分時間都在家)Most children are naughty.(大部分的孩子都淘氣)/ This is the most exciting part of the film.(這是電影中最令人興奮的部分)/She is mostly out on Sundays.(星期天她一般不在家)

(22) (be) worth、(be) worthy of的區別:worth一般被看作是介詞,後面接名詞或者動名詞,用主動表示被動含義,還可以用副詞well修飾;worthy of表示“值得的、配得上的”,後面跟動名詞的被動形式。如:What is worth doing at all is worth doing well(凡是值得做的,就值得好好去做) / The house is worth ¥300,000.(房子價值30萬元)/ This book is well worth reading several times.(這本書值得好好讀幾遍)/ It is a thing worthy of being seen.(這是一個值得看的東西)

(23) almost、nearly的區別:兩個詞意思相近,都表示“幾乎、將近”,大多數情況下可以互換,與否定詞連用時用almost不用nearly。almost no 相當於hardly any(幾乎沒有)。如:He had done almost nothing today.(他今天幾乎沒有幹什麼) / We are

almost/nearly there.(我們幾乎就到那裡了)/ Almost nobody/Hardly anybody understood his words.(幾乎沒有人懂他的話)

(24) a bit與a little的區別：這兩個名詞短語經常當作副詞使用,修飾形容詞或副詞的原級或比較級,可以互換,語氣比rather弱。如: This digital camera is a bit(a little) expensive.(這台數碼相機有點貴)/ It is a little(a bit) colder than yesterday.(今天比昨天冷了點)

另外,a little可以直接加不可數名詞,a bit 則採用“a bit + of +名詞(不可數或可數名詞複數)”的形式。如: I have got a bit of a cold.(我有點感冒)/ Go and get a little water for me, please.(請你去給我搞點水來)

[注意] not a bit(=not at all)意為“根本不”,而 not a little則意為“非常,不是一點”。

### 3、形容詞、副詞的原級、比較級和最高級

1、分類:形容詞和副詞有原級、比較級和最高級三級。

原級變為比較級和最高級有規則變化和不規則變化兩種。

2、規則變化:

(1)單音節和部分雙音節形容詞和副詞,在原級的後面加上er,est構成比較級和最高級。

a)直接加er,est :

b)以重讀閉音節結尾的,要雙寫最後一個輔音字母,後加er,est:

c)以輔音字母+y結尾的,先把y改為i再加上er,est:

(2)兩個音節或兩個以上的音節的,在原級前加more / most.

3、不規則變化:

原級 比較級 最高級 good好的 better更好的 best最好的 well好;(身體)好的, bad,badly糟糕的,糟糕地 worse更糟糕的,更糟糕地;(身體)更不舒服的 worst最糟糕的,最糟糕地;(身體)最不舒服的 ill(身體)不舒服的 many許多的(可數) more更多的;更 most最多的;最 much許多的(不可數);非常 little少的 less更少的 least最少的 far遠的;遠地 farther更遠的;更遠地 farthest最遠的;最遠地 further進一步的(地) furthest最深刻的(地)

4、形容詞和副詞的原級、比較級和最高級的用法:

(1)講述某人/物自身的情況時,用原級。基本句型是:

主語(sb./sth) + 謂語動詞 + (very/too/so/quite/rather...) + 形容詞/副詞原級 +....

如: He is very old now.(他現在很老了) / They ran quite fast.(它們跑得相當快) / The weather looks rather bad.(天氣看上去相當糟) / I am so happy!(我是如此的快樂)

☆表示兩者之間沒有差別時,使用句型:

主語(第一個人物) + 謂語動詞 + as + 形容詞/副詞原級 + as + 第二個人物 +....

如: He is as excited as his younger sister.(他和他妹妹一樣興奮)/ Lily rode her bike as slowly as an old lady.(莉莉騎車像老太太一樣慢)/ They picked as many apples as the farmers (did).(他們摘的蘋果和農民一樣多)

☆表示第一個人比不上第二個人時,使用句型:

主語(第一個人物) + 謂語動詞(否定式) + as / so + 形容詞/副詞原級 + as + 第二個人物+....

如: He is not so / as excited as his younger sister.(他沒他妹妹那麼興奮) / Lily did not ride her bike so / as slowly as an old lady. (莉莉騎車不像老太太那樣慢) / They didn't pick so / as many apples as the farmers (did). (他們摘的蘋果不如農民多)

(2) 講述兩者有差異,第一個人物超過第二個人物時,用比較級。基本句型:

主語('A')+謂語動詞+(much/a little/even/still)+形容詞/副詞比較級+than+第二個人物('B')+....

如:A modern train is much faster than a car.(現代的火車比轎車快多了) / This book didn't cost me more than that one.(這本書花費我的錢不比那本多)

講述兩者有差異,第一個人物不及第二個人物時,用比較級。句型是:

主語('A') + 謂語動詞 + less+ (多音節形/副)比較級 + than + 第二個人物('B') +....

如:I think English is less difficult than maths.(我認為英語不比數學難)/ Do you think it less important to learn a foreign language?(你認為學外語不那麼重要嗎?)

(3)講述某人/物是一群之中最突出的一個時,用最高級。句型是:

主語(sb./sth) + 謂語動詞 +(the) +形容詞/副詞最高級 +in / of ....

如:The Changjiang River is the longest in China.(長江是中國最長的河流) / He jumped (the) highest of the three (boys).(三個男生中他跳得最高)

4、關於比較等級的重要注釋:

1、以上六個句型中,如果動詞是及物或不及物動詞,則後面用副詞;如果後面是連系動詞,則後面用形容詞。如:This car is the fastest of the four.(形容詞)(這輛汽車是四輛之中最快的)/ This car runs (the) fastest of the four.(副詞)(這輛汽車是四輛之中跑得最快的)

2、“比較級+and+比較級”表示“越來越.....”。如:The weather is getting warmer and warmer.(天越來越溫暖了)

3、“the+比較級...,the+比較級...”表示“越...就越...”。如:The more trees we plant,the better it will be.(我們栽的樹越多,情況就會越好)/ The harder you try,the greater your progress is.(你越是努力,進步就越大)

4、一般的形容詞或副詞的比較級前面可以加much/a little/even/still,而表示數量的more之前還可以加some/ any/ no/ one/ two/ many/ several/ a lot等詞。如:It is much colder today than yesterday.(今天比昨天冷多了)/ Would you like some more coffee?(你還要些咖啡嗎?)/He did not eat any more.(他沒有再吃)

5、more than / less than分別可以理解為“多於/少於”,相當於副詞,more than=over; less than=under。如:I lived in New York for more than four months.(我在紐約生活了四個多月)

6、“one of the +最高級+名詞(複數)”整個短語為單數含義,謂語要用單數形式。如:One of the oldest houses has been burnt in a fire.(最古老的一幢房子在一場大火中被燒毀了)

7、“Which / Who+動詞+形/副,□,□or□?”句型中,如果有兩個選項,形/副用比較級,如果有三個選項,形/副用最高級。如:Who has more books, Lin Tao or Han Mei?(林濤和韓梅誰的書最多?)/ Which is the heaviest,a pig,a horse or an elephant?(豬、馬、象哪個最重?)

8、上下文中含有both/either/neither/two/twins等表示兩個事物的詞時,用比較級,而且往往還要加the;含有all/none/no one/ every等表示三個或三個以上事物時,用最高級。如:--Do you like the smaller one?--Neither.(小一點的那個你喜歡嗎?一個都不喜歡)/ --Which do you like best?--All of them!(你最喜歡哪個?全部。)

七、介詞:

1、介詞的主要用法:

介詞是一種虛詞,不能獨立使用。介詞之後一般有名詞或代詞(賓格)或相當於名詞的其他詞類、短語或從句作它的賓語,即構成介詞短語。有些介詞是由兩個以上的詞構成的短語介詞,如:out of(從...中出來), because of(因為), away from(距離...), on top of(在...頂上), ever since(自從...), next to(在...隔壁), according to(根據...),

in front of(在...前方)等。

## 2、介詞的分類表：(見下表)

地點(位置、範圍)介詞：above在...前, about在...附近, across在...對面, after在...後面, against倚著..., along在...近旁, among在...中間, around在...周圍, round在...周圍, at在...處, before在...前, behind在...後, below低於..., beside在...旁邊, between在...之間, by在...旁, down在...下麵, from來自..., in在...裡面, inside在...裡面, near靠近..., of在...之中, on在...上面, out of在...之外, outside在...外面, over在...上方, under在...下方, up在...上面, on top of在...頂部, in front of在...前, close to靠近..., in the middle of在...的中間, at the end of在...的末端,等等。

方向(目標趨向)介詞：across橫越..., against對抗..., along沿著..., around繞著..., round環繞..., at朝著..., behind向...後面, etween...and...從...到..., by路過/通過..., down向...下, for向..., from從/離..., in進入..., into進入..., inside到...裡面, near接近..., off脫離/除..., on向...上, out of向...外, outside向...外, over跨過..., past經過/超過..., through穿過..., to向/朝..., towards朝著..., on to到...上面, onto到...上面, up向...上, away from遠離...

時間介詞：about大約..., after在...以後, at在... (時刻), before在...以前, by到...為止, during在...期間, for有...(之久), from從...(時)起, in在(上/下午);在(多久)以後, on在(某日), past過了...(時), since自從...(至今), through貫穿...(期間), till直到...時, until直到...時, to到(下一時刻), ever since從那時起至今, at the beginning of在...開始時, at the end of在...末, in the middle of在...當中, at the time of在...時

方式介詞：as作為/當作..., by用/由/乘坐/被..., in用...(語言), like與...一樣, on騎(車)/徒(步), 通過(收音機/電視機), over通過(收音機), through通過..., with用(材料), 用(手/腳/耳/眼), without沒有...

涉及介詞：about關於..., except除了..., besides除了...還... for對於/就...而言, in在...(方面), of...的, 有關..., on關於/有關..., to對...而言, towards針對..., with就...而言

其它介詞：

【目的介詞】for為了..., from防止..., to為了...

【原因介詞】for因為..., with由於..., because of因為...

【比較介詞】as與...一樣, like象...一樣, than比..., to與...相比, unlike與...不同

【伴隨/狀態介詞】against和...一起(比賽), at在(上班/休息/上學/家, etc.), in穿著...(衣服/顏色), into變成..., on在(值日), with與...一起, 有/帶著/長著..., without沒有/無/不與...一起

## 3、介詞短語的句法作用：

介詞短語相當於一個形容詞或副詞,可用作狀語、定語和表語。如：The man came <down the stairs>.(狀)(那個人走下樓來)/The woman <with a flower on her head> is from the countryside.(定)(頭上戴花的婦女來自鄉下)/The teacher is now with the pupils.(表)(老師現在和學生在一起)

## 4、介詞短語在句子中的位置：

介詞短語做狀語時,如果表示時間/地點,可以放在句首或句尾,如果表示方向/方式/伴隨/涉及/原因/目的/比較,一般放在句尾;介詞短語作表語時放在連系動詞之後;介詞短語作定語時,只能放在被修飾的名詞之後。如：He wanted to find a good job in Shanghai the next year.(狀語)(他想來年在上海找份好工作)/ They searched the room for the thief.(他們在房間裡搜索小偷) / The letters are for you.(表語)(信是給你的)/ Have you seen a cat with a black head and four white legs?(定語)(你看見一隻黑頭白腿的貓了嗎?)

## 5、重要注釋：

(1) this / that / these / those / last / next / a / every / each等詞構成的時間短語,前面不用任何介詞。如: Every year travellers from abroad come to visit Pingyao.(每年都有國外的遊客來遊覽平遙鎮)/ He had a bad cold that week.(那個星期他患重感冒)

(2) for有時用來引出動詞不定式的邏輯主語,常翻譯成“對於...而言”。如: It's too hard for me to finish the work in only one hour.(讓我在區區一個小時內完成這項工作太難了)/ The house is big enough for 10 men to live in.(房子夠大的可以容10個人住)

(3) of有時用來表示後面的人物正好是前面的表語的邏輯主語。如: It's very nice/kind of you to do so.(你這麼做真是太好了)

(4) 介詞有時會與它的賓語分離,而且賓語前置。

① 當賓語是疑問詞時。Who are you talking about?(你們在談論誰?)

② 賓語在從句中當連接詞時。He has a younger brother who he must take good care of.(他有一個需要他照顧的小弟。)/ Do you know who our teacher is talking with over there?(你知道我們的老師在那邊和什麼人談話嗎?)

③ 動詞不定式作定語且該動詞為不及物動詞,後面有介詞。I finally found a chair to sit on.(我最終找到了一張椅子坐。)

(5) 記住一些固定片語: arrive at/in(到達...), on foot(步行), not...at all(根本不), to the north of(在...以北), in the east of(在...的東部), in the night(在夜間), at night(在晚上), be afraid of(害怕...), be full of(充滿/裝滿...), be filled with(充滿/裝滿...), be good/bad for(對...有益/有害), be made of(由...做成), be made from(由...製造), play with(玩耍.....), look out of(朝...外面看), at the end of(在...末梢/結束時), by the end of(不遲於.../到...末為止), with the help of或with one's help(在...的幫助下), look after(照料...), look for(尋找...), on a bike(=by bike)騎車, help sb. with(幫某人做...), get on (well) with(與某人相處[融洽]), 等等。

## 6、某些介詞的用法辨析:

(1) 時間或地點介詞in、on、at的用法區別: 表示時間時, in表示在一段時間裡(在將來時句子中則表示在一段時間之後), on表示在具體的某一天或者某天的上下午等, at表示在某個時刻或者瞬間; 表示地點時, in表示在某個範圍之內, on表示在某個平面上或與一個面相接觸, at則表示在某個具體的場所或地點。如: He was born on the morning of May 10th.(他出生於五月十日的早晨)/ I usually get up at 7:00 in the morning.(我通常在早上的七點鐘起床) / His glasses are right on his nose.(他的眼鏡就架在他的鼻子上)/ He is at the cinema at the moment.(此刻他正在電影院)

(2) after與in表示時間的用法區別: “after+(具體時刻/從句)”表示“在...時刻之後”常用於一般時態; “in+(一段時間)”表示“在(多久)之後”,常用於將來時態。如: He said that he would be here after 6:00.(他說他六點鐘之後會來這兒)/ My father is coming back from England in about a month.(我父親大約一個月以後從英國回來)

(3) since與for表示時間的用法區別: “since+(具體時刻/that-從句)”表示“自從...起一直到現在”, “for +(一段時間)”表示“總共有...之久”, 都常用於完成時態; 如: Uncle Li has worked in this factory since 1970.(李叔叔自從1970年起就在這家工廠工作了)/ Uncle Li has worked in this factory for over 30 years. (李叔叔在這家工廠已經工作了30多年)

(4) by、in與with表示方式的用法區別: 都可以表示“工具、手段”, 但是by主要表示“乘坐”某個交通工具或“以.....方式”, 在被动句中可以表示動作的執行者; in表示“使用”某種語言/文字, with表示“使用”某個具體的工具、手段。如: We see with our eyes and walk with our feet.(我們用眼睛看東西, 用雙腳走路)/ Please write that



article(文章) in English.(請你用英語寫那篇文章)/ Let's go to the zoo by taxi.(我們打的去動物園吧。)/ It was written by Lao She.(那是老舍寫的)

(5) about與on的用法區別: 都可以表示“有關...”,但是about的意義比較廣,而on主要表示“有關...(專題/課程)”。如: Tom is going to give a talk on the history of America.(湯姆要作一個美國歷史的報告)/ They are very excited talking about the coming field trip.(他們興致勃勃地談論著即將來到的野外旅遊)

(6) through與across、over的用法區別: through指“穿過...(門洞/人群/樹林)”; across和over可以指“跨越...(街道/河流)”,可互換,但是表示“翻過...”時只能用over。如: Just then a rat (鼠) ran across the road.(就在那時一隻老鼠跑過路面)/ There is a bridge across/over the river.(河上有座橋)/ They climbed over the mountain and arrived there ahead of time.(他們翻過大山提前到達了那裡)/ The visitors went through a big gate into another park.(參觀者們穿過一個大門來到另一個公園)

(7) as與like的區別: 兩個詞都表示“像.....”,但是as譯為“作為.....”,表示的是職業、職務、作用等事實,而like譯為“像.....一樣”,表示外表,不是事實。如: Let me speak to you as a father.(我以父親的身份和你講話。)(說話者是聽者的父親) / Let me speak to you like a father.(讓我像一位父親一樣和你講話)(說話者不是聽者的父親)

(8) at the end of、by the end of、to the end、in the end的用法區別: at the end of... 既可以表示時間也可以表示地點,譯為“在...末;在...盡頭”,常與過去時連用; by the end of... 只能表示時間,譯為“在...前;到...為止”,常用于過去完成時; in the end與at last基本等義,表示“終於、最後”,通常用於過去時; to the end譯為“到...的終點為止”,前面往往有表示運動或連續性的動詞。如: By the end of last term we had learned 16 units of Book III.(到上學期期末我們已經學習了第三冊16個單元)/ At the end of the road you can find a big white house with brown windows.(在路的盡頭你能找到一幢有棕色窗戶的白房子)/ They left for Beijing at the end of last week.(上週末他們動身去了北京)/ In the end he succeeded in the final exams.(他最終在期末考試中考及格了)/ We should go on with the work to the end.(我們應該把工作幹到底)/ Follow this road to the end and you will see a post office.(沿這條路走到底就能看見一家郵電局)

(9) for a moment、for the moment、in a moment、at the moment的區別: for a moment“一會兒、片刻”(=for a while),常與持續性動詞連用; for the moment“暫時、目前”,常用于現在時; in a moment“一會兒、立即、馬上”(=soon; in a few minutes),一般用於將來時; at the moment“此刻,眼下”(=now),用於現在進行時。如: Please wait for a moment.(請稍等)/ Let's leave things as they are for the moment.(暫時就維持現狀吧!) / I'll come back in a moment.(我過會兒回來)/ I am very busy at the moment.(眼下我很忙)

(10) but的問題: 用介詞but引出另一個動詞時,要注意: 如果前面有do,後面就用原形動詞,前面沒有do時,後面的動詞要加to。如: I could do nothing but wait.(我什麼也做不了只能等) / They had no choice(選擇) but to fight.(他們沒有選擇只有戰鬥)

(11) in front of 與in the front of: in front of“在...的前面”,與in the front of“在...的前部”。如: A car was parking in front of the hall.(大廳跟前停著一輛汽車)/ In the front of the hall stood a big desk.(大廳前部立著一個大講臺)

(12) except與besides的區別: except“除了”,表示排除掉某人物,即不包含;而besides“除了”則表示包含,即“不僅.....又.....”。如: Everyone went to the Palace Museum except Tom.(除了Tom,大家都去了故宮博物院)(Tom沒有去故宮)/ Besides Chinese he also studied many other subjects.(除了漢語之外,他還學其他許多功課) (“漢語”也是他學的功課之一)

## 八、動詞

## 1、動詞的分類：

類別 意義 義例 句 實義動詞 含有實在的意義,表示動作或狀態,在句子中能獨立作謂語。She has some bananas. 她吃些香蕉。

They eat a lot of potatoes. 他們常吃土豆。

I'm reading an English book now.

我現在正看一本英文書。連系動詞 本身有一定的詞義,但不能獨立作謂語,必須和表語一起構成謂語。His father is a teacher.他父親是教師。

Twins usually look the same.

雙胞胎通常看起來一樣。

The teacher became very angry. 老師變得很生氣。助動詞 本身沒有詞義,不能獨立作謂語,只能和主要動詞一起構成謂語動詞,用來表示否定、疑問、時態、語態或其它語法形式,助動詞自身有人稱、單複數和時態的變化。He doesn't speak English. 他不說英語。

We are playing basketball. 我們在打籃球。

Do you have a brother? 你有兄弟嗎? 情態動詞 本身有一定的意義,不能獨立作謂語,只能和主要動詞一起構成謂語動詞,表示說話人的語氣和情態。情態動詞沒有人稱和單複數的變化,有些情態動詞有過去式。You can keep the books for two weeks.

這些書你可以借兩個星期。

May I smoke here? 我可以在這兒抽煙嗎?

We must go now. 我們現在得走了。 ★重要注解：

### (1) 關於實義動詞：

① 英語的實義動詞又可分為及物動詞和不及物動詞兩大類：

後面必須跟賓語意義才完整的叫及物動詞；本身意義完整,後面不需跟賓語的叫不及物動詞。

② 有些動詞通常只作不及物動詞。如：go, come, happen, lie, listen, rise, arrive, fall 等。

有些動詞通常用作及物動詞。如：say, raise, lay, find, buy 等。

③ 大多數動詞可以兼作及物動詞和不及物動詞。如：study, sing 等。

④ 有些動詞作及物動詞與作不及物動詞時的意義有所不同。如：know, wash 等。

⑤ 有些動詞常和介詞、副詞或其它詞類一起構成固定片語,形成短語動詞。如：listen, reply, wait, look.

### (2) 關於連系動詞：

① 連系動詞用來連接主語和表語,連系動詞後面常為形容詞。

② 常見的連系動詞有：be、become、look、feel、sound、smell、taste、seem、turn、grow、get、go、fall、sit、stand、lie 等。

③ 有些連系動詞來源於實義動詞,意思也跟著變化：look(看→看起來)、feel(感覺、摸→感到)、smell(聞、嗅→聞起來)、taste(嘗→嘗起來)、turn(翻轉、轉動→變得)、grow(生長→變得)、get(得到、到達→變得)、go(去→變得),所不同的是,作為實義動詞時,後面不能跟形容詞。

#### [注釋]

become、get、go、be、grow、turn的用法區別：become表示“變成”,比較正式,通常不用將來時表示動作已經完成。get也表示動作已經完成,但是更加口語化,通常表示溫度、時間、歲數等變化。go表示“變得”,常見於某些短語中,後面常有形容詞 bad、blind、hungry 等。be表示“是、成為、當”,多用於將來時、祈使句或不定式中。grow表示“變得”,常指逐漸的變化,表示身高、歲數的增長。turn表示“變得”,指變為與原先不同的情況,通常指顏色等變化。如：I was caught in the rain and I became

ill.(我淋雨感冒了)/ He has got rich.(他變富了)/ He will be a scientist in the future.(將來他將成為科學家)/ My little brother has grown much taller in the past year.(在過去的一年裡我的弟弟長得高多了)/ The sandwich has gone bad.(那塊三明治已經變壞)/ Her face turned red after her mother criticized(批評) her.(媽媽批評了他以後他的臉變紅了)

### (3) 關於助動詞:

①常見的助動詞有:用於進行時和被動語態的be (am, is, are ,was, were, been, being ) ;用於完成時的have(has,had,having) ;用於將來時的shall (should) ; will (would)和用於一般時的do(does,did) .

②助動詞必須同主語的人稱和數一致,也就是說因主語人稱、數的不同而採用不同的形式,其中有些助動詞也可作情態動詞。如: shall, will, should, would.

### (4) 關於情態動詞:

①常見的情態動詞有: can (could) ,may (might), must ,shall (should), will (would), dare (dared) , need等,另外,have to、had better也當作情態動詞使用。情態動詞後面必須加動詞的原形。

②can表示體力、腦力方面的能力或客觀的可能性。口語中,在詢問或說明一件事可不可以做時,常用“can”代替“may”。情態動詞“can”的過去式是“could”,否定式是“cannot”通常縮寫成“can’t”,“could”的否定式是“could not”,通常縮寫成“couldn’t”。如: Can I help you?(要幫忙嗎?)/ He can swim.(他會游泳)/ That can’t be Mr Li.(那不可能是李先生)

③ may表示允許、請求或可能性,用may提問時,肯定回答一般用Certainly或Yes,you may.;否定回答一般用can’t或mustn’t。如: May I ask you a question?—Certainly.(可以問你一個問題嗎?當然可以)/ You may go now.(現在你可以走了)/ It may be in your pocket.(它可能在你的衣袋裡)

④ must表示“必須”、“一定”的意思。表示“必須”時否定形式是mustn’t;表示“一定”時,否定形式是“can’t” 如: We must be very careful when we cross the road.(我們過馬路時一定要非常小心)/ It must be Jack.(那准是傑克)/ I haven’t seen Kate today. She can’t be here.(我今天沒有看到過凱特,她不可能在這裡)

[注意]用must(必須)進行提問時,肯定回答用must,否定回答用needn’t;用must(一定)進行提問時,肯定回答仍用must,但是否定回答用can’t。如: Must we clean the room before we leave? —Yes,you must.或No,you needn’t.(我們走之前必須要打掃房間嗎?是的,必須打掃。/ 不,不需要。)/ Must she be in the room? —Yes,she must.或No,she can’t.(她一定在房間裡嗎?是的,一定。/ 不,不可能在。)

⑤ “have to”表示“不得不”、“必須”。We’ll have to leave now for it is very late at night.

have to的疑問形式是:助動詞+...+have to,否定形式是:助動詞+not+have to或者用needn’t。如: Do you have to stay until 8 o’clock?(你得呆到8點鐘嗎?)/ You don’t have to do so.(=You needn’t do so.)(你不用這麼做)

⑥ shall在問句中,可表示徵求對方意見,與第一人稱連用;在陳述句的第二、三人稱的主語後或表示“命令”、“警告”、“允許”等。如: Shall we go to the zoo this weekend?(我們這個週末去動物園好嗎?)/ He shall bring his own book next time.(他下次必須帶自己的書來)

⑦ should可表示“勸告”、“建議”、“驚奇”等意思。We should speak to old people politely.(我們應該禮貌地對老人講話)

⑧ will表示“意願”、“決心”等意思,一般與第二人稱連用。如: Will you please close the door for me?(請你替我把門關上好嗎?)/ I will teach you a lesson.(我要教訓你一頓)

⑨ would表示過去的“意願”、“決心”等。He would sit near the fire every time he returned home.(每次他回到家中總要坐在火爐邊)  
 would也可以表示現在的情況,表達說話人向對方提出的要求,語氣比“will”婉轉、客氣。在日常會話中,“我想要...”通常用“I would like to”或“I should(I’d) like to”來表示。如: Would you like to have a rest at the moment?(你現在想要休息一下嗎?)  
 would還可以表示過去經常發生的事情。如: Every year parents would tell their children about the boy who would save his people.(每一年父母們總是向孩子們講述這個將會拯救他的人民的男孩的事)  
 ⑩ need表示“需要”,用於疑問句或否定句。“need”作實義動詞時,在肯定、否定、疑問句中都可以用。如: He needn’t do it in such a hurry.(他不需要如此匆忙地做這件事)/ He needs some help.(他需要一些說明)/ He doesn’t need to bring his football socks then.(那麼他就無須帶上足球襪了)  
 (11) dare是“敢”的意思,用法幾乎與“need”完全相同,即在疑問句和否定句中,可以作情態動詞,後面用不帶“to”的動詞不定式。在肯定句中和實義動詞一樣,後面的動詞不定式要帶“to”。How dare you say I am a fool?(你竟敢說我是個傻瓜?)/ He didn’t dare to touch the red button.(他不敢觸碰那個紅色的按鈕)  
 (12) ‘d better (do)(“最好是”)一般也當作情態動詞使用,否定式是: ‘d better not (do). 如: You’d better sit here and say nothing.(你最好坐在這兒不講話)/ You’d better not speak because he is sleeping.(你最好不要講話因為他正在睡覺)

## 2、動詞詞形變化一覽表:

### (1)規則動詞變化表:

規則變化 原形動詞結尾情況 現在時單三人稱 現在分詞 過去式和過去分詞 一般情況 +s +ing +ed s,x,ch,sh,o結尾 +es +ing +ed 輔音字母+y結尾 y→i,+es +ing y→i,+ed 重讀閉音節一元一輔結尾 +s 雙寫輔音字母,+ing 雙寫輔音字母,+ed 不發音的e結尾 +s 去掉e,+ing +d ie結尾 +s ie→y,+ing +d 不規則變化 have→has; be→is(無) (見不規則動詞變化表) 注意:①在加ing或ed時動詞如果以“r”結尾,尾音節又重讀的動詞,“r”應雙寫。

②s/es的讀音規則:在清輔音後讀[s];在濁輔音後和母音後讀[z];在[s]、[F]、[z]、[tF]、[dV]後讀[iz].

③ed的讀音規則:在清輔音後讀[t];在濁輔音後和母音後讀[d];在[t]、[d]後讀[id].

### (2)不規則動詞變化表:(原形 → 過去式 → 過去分詞)

be(am,is) was been lose lost lost be(are) were been make made made beat beat beaten may might become became become mean meant meant begin began begun meet met met blow blew blown mistake mistook mistaken break broke broken must must bring brought brought pay paid paid build built built put put put buy bought bought read read Read can could ride rode ridden catch caught caught ring rang rung choose chose chosen rise rose risen come came come run ran run cost cost cost say said said cut cut cut see saw seen dig dug dug sell sold sold do did done send sent sent draw drew drawn set set set drink drank drunk shall should drive drove driven shine shone shone eat ate eaten show showed shown fall fell fallen shut shut shut feel felt felt sing sang sung find found found sink sank/sunk sunk/sunken fly flew flown sit set set forget forgot forgot/forgotten sleep slept slept freeze froze frozen smell smelt smelt get got got speak spoke spoken give gave given spend spent spent go went gone spill spilt spilt grow grew grown spoil spoilt spoilt hang hung/hanged hung/hanged stand stood stood have(has) had had

sweep swept swept hear heard heard swim swam swum hide hid hidden take took taken hit hit hit teach taught taught hold held held tell told told hurt hurt hurt think thought thought keep kept kept throw threw thrown know knew known understand understood understood lay laid laid wake woke/waked woken/waked learn learnt/learned learnt/learned wear wore worn leave left left will would lend lent lent win won won let let let write wrote witten lie lay lain 3、be(“是/存在”)

動詞的各種時態變化：

一般現在時 一般將來時 現在完成時 I am....

You are....

He/She/It is....

We/You/They are.... (I等各人稱) will be....

I am

He/She/It is going to be...

We/You/They are I have been....

You have been....

She/he/It has been....

We/You/They have been.... 一般過去時 過去將來時 過去完成時 I was....

You were....

He/She/It was....

We/You/They were.... (I等各人稱) would be....

I was

He/She/It was going to be...

We/You/They were I had been....

You had been....

She/he/It had been....

We/You/They had been.... 注意：句型變化時，

否定句在am /is /are /will /have /has /was /were /had /would 後面加not,而且not都可以縮寫為n't (am後面not不可以縮寫)；

疑問句將am /is /are /will /have /has /was /were /had /would 提前到句首。

4、其它謂語動詞(主動語態)的時態變化一覽表：

現在時態 一般現在時 現在進行時 一般將來時 現在完成時 謂語動詞構成 動詞用原形(單三加s / es)

(問句和否定句借用助詞do / does) am

is +動詞-ing

are will + 動詞原形

am

is +going to+動詞原形

are have +過去分詞

has 過去時態 一般過去時 過去進行時 過去將來時 過去完成時 謂語動詞構成 動詞用過去式

(問句和否定句借用助詞did) was

+動詞-ing

were would + 動詞原形

was

+going to+動詞原形

were had +過去分詞 5、八種時態的具體用法：

(1) 一般現在時 表示現階段經常或習慣發生的動作或存在的狀態,或說明主語的特徵。

① 一般現在時句子中常有的時間狀語: often, usually, sometimes, always, every (day等), once/twice, a (week等), on (Sunday等), never, in the (morning等)。如: They go to the Palace Museum once a year.(他們每年去一次故宮)/ They often discuss business in the evening.(他們經常在晚上商談生意)

② 表示客觀真理、事實、人的技能或現在的狀態時句子裡一般不用時間狀語。如: The earth turns round the sun.(地球繞著太陽轉)/ Light travels faster than sound.(光傳播比聲音快)

③ 表示十分確定會發生(如安排好的事情)或按照時間表進行的事情,用一般現在時可以表達將來,句子中可以有將來時間。如: The train for Haikou leaves at 8:00 in the morning.(開往漢口的列車上午8點開車)

④ 在時間狀語從句中(以when, after, before, while, until, as soon as等引導)和條件狀語從句中(以if, unless引導),用一般現在時代替一般將來時,句子可以有將來時間。如: Please ring me up as soon as you arrive in Germany.(你一到德國就給我打電話) / If it rains tomorrow, we will have to stay at home.(如果明天下雨我們就只好呆在家)

⑤ 一般現在時用於倒裝句中,可以表示正在發生的動作,動詞以come, go為主。如: Here comes the bus. (車來了) / There goes the bell.(鈴響了)。

⑥ 一般現在時常用於體育比賽的解說或寓言故事中。Now the midfielder catches the ball and he keeps it.

⑦ 人的心理活動和感官動作一般用一般現在時而不用現在進行時表達,常見動詞有: like, love, hate, dislike, want, wish, hope, think(認為), understand, remember, forget, mean, need, hear, feel, see。如: I think it is going to snow.(我想天要下雪了)/ I really hope you can enjoy your stay here.(我真的希望你愉快地呆在這兒)

(2) 一般過去時 表示過去某時發生的動作或狀態,這種動作或狀態可能是一次性,也可能經常

發生。

① 表示過去具體時刻發生的一次性動作時,時間狀語有: at (eight) (yesterday morning), (ten minutes) ago, when引導的時間狀語從句。如: I got up at 6:00 this morning.(我是早上六點鐘起床的)/ Little Tom broke the window at half past nine this morning.(小湯姆今天早上九點半把窗子打破了)/ When he went into the room, he saw a stranger talking with his father.(他走進房間時發現一個陌生人正和他父親談話)

② 表示過去一段時間內不知何時發生的一次性動作時,時間狀語有: yesterday, last (year等), in (1998 等)。如: He came to our city in the year 2000.(他2000年來到我們市)

③ 表示過去一個階段中經常發生的事情時,時間狀語有: last..., in..., from...to..., for(10 years), often, usually, sometimes, always, never等。如: Mr Jackson usually went to evening schools when he was young. / Every day he went to the rich man and borrowed books from him.

④ 講故事、對過去經歷的回憶、雙方都明白的過去事件等一般用過去時,而且經常省略時間狀語。如: I happened to meet Rose in the street.(我正好在街上遇到露西)

(3) 一般將來時 表示將來某一時刻或經常發生的動作或狀態。

① 一般將來時的時間狀語有: tomorrow, this (afternoon), next (year), one day, now, soon,

someday, sometime, in the future, when 引導的從句等。

② 用will構成的將來時,表示動作與人的主觀願望無關。“shall”用於第一人稱,“will”

用於所有人稱。如:I will graduate from this school soon.(我很快就要從這所中學畢業了)/ You will stay alone after I leave.(我走了之後你就要一個人過了)

③ “am/is/are going to+動詞原形”表示打算或準備要做的事情,或者主觀判斷即將要發生的事情,而“am/is/are to +動詞原形”表示安排或計畫中的動作。如:A man told them that the woman was to give birth to the special baby.(有一個人告訴他們那個婦女就會生下那個特別的男孩)/ It's going to rain soon.(天快要下雨了)

④ 表示一個人臨時決定要做某事,可以用will表達。如:I will go to the lab to get some chemicals(化學藥劑). So please wait until I return.(我要到化學實驗室去取些藥品,請等我回頭)

⑤ 現在進行時、一般現在時也可以表示將來。(見相應時態)

⑥ shall和will 在口語的一些疑問句中相當於情態動詞。Shall一般與第一人稱連用,will與第二人稱連用。如:Shall we go to the zoo next Saturday?(我們下週六去動物園好嗎?)/ Will you please open the door for me?(替我把門打開好嗎?)

⑦ “be to +動詞原形”表示按照計畫將要發生的事情。如:An angel came to tell her that she was to have this special boy.

(4)現在進行時 現在進行時表示現在正在進行的動作或是現階段正發生而此刻不一定在進行的動作。

① 現在進行時由“助動詞be (am is are ) +現在分詞”構成。

② 現在進行時的時間狀語有: now, this ..., these...等,但經常不用。如:What are you doing up in the tree?(你在樹上幹什麼?)/ I am writing a long novel these days.(我最近在寫一本長篇小說)

③ 表示即將發生的動作,一般指近期安排好的事情。常見的動詞有: come, go, stay, leave, spend, do等。如:I'm coming now.(我就來)/ What are you doing tomorrow?(你明天干什麼?)/ He is leaving soon.(他就要走了)

④ 表示頻繁發生或反復進行的動作,常與always等頻度副詞連用,以表示讚揚、不滿或討厭等感情色彩。如:He is always borrowing money from me and forgetting all about it some time later.(他老是向我借錢,過一些時候就忘得一乾二淨)

初一:

1.— Where is your mum?

— She \_\_\_\_\_ at the kitchen.

(5)過去進行時 過去進行時表示過去某一時刻或某階段正在進行的動作。

① 過去進行時由“was(第一、三人稱單數)或were(第二人稱單數和各人稱的複數)+現在分詞”構成。

② 過去進行時的時間狀語有: then, at that time, this time yesterday, at (eight) yesterday (morning), (a year) ago, 以及由when引出的時間狀語從句。如: He was cooking supper this time yesterday.(昨天這個時候他正在做晚飯)/ The little girl was playing with her toy when I saw her.(我看到小女孩的時候她正在玩玩具)

③ 用於賓語從句或時間狀語從句中,表示與主句動作同時進行而且是延續時間較長。句子中通常不用時間狀語。如: She was it happen when she was walking past.(她路過時看到事情的發生)/ They sang a lot of songs while they were walking

in the dark forest.(他們在黑暗的森林裡走時唱了很多歌)

④ 也可以表示過去一個階段頻繁發生或反復進行的動作,常與always等頻度副詞連用,以表示讚揚、不滿或討厭等感情色彩。如:He was always borrowing money from me when he lived here.(他住在這裡時老向我借錢)

(6)現在完成時 現在完成時表示一個發生在過去的、對現在仍有影響的動作,或表示開始在過去,並且一直延續到現在,甚至還可能延續下去的動作。

①在完成時由“助動詞have (has)+動詞的過去分詞”構成。

②表示發生在過去的對現在仍有影響的動作時,時間狀語有:already, yet, just, once, twice, ever, never, three times, before等。如:I have never seen such fine pictures before. (我以前從來沒有看過這麼好的畫)/ He has just gone to England.(他剛去英國)

③表示在過去開始一直延續到現在(可能延續下去)的動作或狀態時,時間狀語有:for (two years), since 1990, since (two weeks ago)和since引導的狀語從句。如:I have been away from my hometown for thirty years.(我離開家鄉有30年了)/ Uncle Wang has worked in the factory since it opened.(自從這家工廠開張,王叔叔一直在那兒工作)

④口語中have got往往表示have(有)的意思。如:They have got thousands of books in their library.(他們圖書館有上萬本書)

⑤have been to與have gone to的區別:have gone to(“已經去了”)表示人不在這裡,have been to(“去過”)表示人在這裡。如:--Where is Mr Li? --He has gone to the UK.(李先生在哪裡?他去了英國。)/ --Do you know something about Beijing? --Yes, I have been to Beijing three times. (你知道北京的情況嗎?是的,我去過那裡三次。)

⑥在完成時中,一個瞬間性動詞(一次性動作)不能與表示一段時間的狀語連用,此時須將該瞬間動詞改為延續性動詞或狀態動詞。具體變化見下表:

瞬間性動詞的完成時 → 延續性動詞或狀態動詞的完成時  
have (already) gone to... have been in / at ... for (two years) has come to... has been here since (1990) (had) left... (had) been away from... arrived... been in...  
died been dead begun been on ended been over  
bought... had... borrowed... kept... joined... been in ...

或者使用下面這個句型:

It is / has been + (多久)+ since + 主語(人)+謂語(過去時)+.....+過去時間狀語 [注意] 在其它的時態中也存在類似問題,記住,關鍵是:瞬間動詞不能和表達一段時間的狀語連用。如:How long may I keep the book?(這本書我能借多久?)(句子中keep取代了borrow)

(7)過去完成時 過去完成時表示過去某一時間或某一動作發生之前已經完成的動作。簡言之,過去完成時所表示的時間是“過去的過去”。

①過去完成時由“助動詞had+動詞的過去分詞”構成。

②過去完成時時間狀語有:by (yesterday), by then, by the end of (last...)或者由when, before等引出狀語從句。有時句子中會有already, just, once, ever, never等詞語,也會有for... 或since...構成的時間狀語。如:They had already finished cleaning the classroom when their teacher came.(當老師來的時候他們已經打掃完了教室)/ The woman had left before he realized she was a cheat.(在他發覺那個婦女是個騙子時她已經走掉了)

③過去完成時常用於賓語從句中、after引導的從句中,或者從句是before引導的主



句中。如：After I had put on my shoes and hat, I walked into the darkness.(我穿上鞋子戴上帽子走進了黑暗之中)/ He said that he had never seen a kangaroo before.(他說他以前從來沒有見過袋鼠)

(8) 過去將來時 過去將來時表示在過去預計將要發生的動作或存在的狀態。

①過去將來時由“助動詞should(第一人稱)或would(第二、三人稱)+動詞原形”構成。在美國英語中,過去將來時的助動詞一律用“would +動詞原形”。

②過去將來時常由於賓語從句中,時間狀語有:later, soon, the next (day).

③在時間狀語從句和條件狀語從句中不可以使用過去將來時,而應該使用一般過去時。如：He promised that he would pay me a lot if I helped him with the project.(他答應付給我許多錢如果我幫助他搞那個項目)/ Every time when he was free, he would sit down and read some books.(每次只要他有空他就會坐下來看看書)

④表示純粹的將來時用would或should,表示打算或主觀認為的事情用was/were going to (+動詞原形)。如：She told me she would be 18 the next month.(她告訴我她下個月就18歲了)/ She told me that she was going to have a walk with her pet dog.(她告訴我她打算帶她的寵物狗去散步)

⑤過去將來時還可以表示一個過去經常性的動作。如：When it rained in the day, he would bring an umbrella with him.(白天下雨時他會隨身帶一把雨傘)

(9)現在完成進行時：現在完成進行時指一個從過去就開始一直延續到現在並由可能繼續下去的動作,它具有現在完成時和現在進行時雙重特徵,結構是：

“have/has + been +動詞的現在分詞”。如：I have been swimming in the cold water for about two hours.(我已經在冰冷的水裡遊了將近兩個小時)/ How long have you been waiting here?(你在這裡一直等了多久?)

6、被動語態：

(1)被動語態定義：被動語態是動詞的一種特殊形式,用來說明主語與謂語動詞之間的關係。如果主語是 動作的執行者(即某人做某事),便叫主動語態;如果主語是動作的承受者(即某事被做),便叫被動語態。主動與被動的區別不是詞序的區別,而是主語與謂語意義上的區別。在英語中只有及物動詞和一些相當於及物動詞的片語才有被動語態的形式。

(2)英語中被動語態由“助動詞be +動詞的過去分詞”構成。助動詞be有時態、人稱和數的變化。被動語態後的by短語有時可省去。具體結構見下表：

現在時態 一般現在時 現在進行時 一般將來時 現在完成時 謂語動詞構成

am

is +p.p.

are am

is +being+p.p.

are will + be+p.p.

am

is +going to+ be + p.p.

are have(has) +been+p.p. 過去時態 一般過去時 過去進行時 過去將來時 過去完成時 謂語動詞構成 was +p.p.

were was

+being+p.p.

were would +be+p.p.

was +going to+be+p.p.

were had +been+p.p. [注] p.p.表示過去分詞。

(1) 被動語態的用法：

① 不知道誰是動作的執行者(即不知道誰做)時用被動語態,省略by短語。如：A

man was killed in the accident.(一個人死於事故)/ This window was broken yesterday.(這扇窗子是昨天被打破的)

②不說或者眾所周知是誰做時,用被動語態,省略by短語。如: Rice is also grown in this place.(這個地方也種水稻)/ A railroad will be built here in three years.(三年之後這裡將要修建一條鐵路)

③強調動作的承受者,句尾加by短語。如: It was written by Lu Xun.(它(書)是魯迅寫的)/ A pet dog is never killed by its owner.(寵物狗是不會被主人宰殺的)

(2) 主動語態如何改寫為被動語態:

主動句: 主語(人/物) + 謂語(及物動詞) + 賓語(人/物) + 其他 + 狀語  
(動作的執行者) (各種時態形式) (動作的承受者)

被動句: 主語(人/物) + 謂語(及物動詞) + by + 人 / 物 + 其他 + 狀語  
(動作的承受者) (be + 過去分詞) (動作的執行者)

(3) 注意點:

①“動詞+間接賓語+直接賓語”改為被動時,可以用間接賓語做被動句的主語。如:

His teacher gave him a dictionary.→He was given a dictionary by his teacher.(老師給他一本字典→他得到老師一本字典)

也可以用直接賓語做被動句的主語,但是需用to或者for引出原句的間接賓語。如: His teacher gave him a dictionary.→A dictionary was given to him by his teacher.(老師給他一本字典→一本字典由老師送給了他)/His father made him a kite.→A kite was made for him by his father.(他的父親給他做了一個風箏→一個風箏由他的父親做給了他)

②“動詞+賓語+動詞原形”改為被動時,動詞原形前要加to。如: The boss made the poor man work 12 hours a day.→The poor man was made to work 12 hours a day.(老闆讓這個可憐的人一天工作12小時→這個可憐人被迫一天工作12小時)

③“動詞+...+介詞”改為被動時,介詞一般在原位不動。如: The girl takes good care of her little brother.→The girl's little brother is taken good care of by her.(女孩照顧小弟弟→女孩的小弟弟由她照顧著)

④“be+過去分詞”未必表示被動語態,而可能是系表結構。如:

He is pleased / worried / tired / .....(系表)(他高興/焦慮/疲勞.....)

He was hit / knocked down / told / shot / .....(被動)(他被擊中/撞倒/關照/射中.....)

7、動詞的非謂語形式:動詞不做謂語時的固定形式。

(1)動詞的非謂語形式包括動詞不定式、動名詞和分詞三種形式；其中分詞又包含現在分詞和過去分詞兩種形式。它們在句子中不能單獨作謂語。

(2)動詞不定式：

① 形式：動詞不定式基本形式由“不定式記號to+動詞原形”構成。它的否定形式只要在“to”前面加上“not”。它的疑問形式是：“wh-疑問詞+to+動詞原形”。\*它的被動形式：“to be +過去分詞”。\*它的完成形式：“to have +過去分詞”。

② 動詞不定式具有名詞、形容詞和副詞的特徵，即可以在句子中作主語、賓語、定語、狀語、表語和賓語補足語。但不定式也保留動詞的某些特徵，即不定式後面可以跟賓語、表語和狀語。動詞不定式加上相關成分就構成不定式短語。

③ 動詞不定式可以放在謂語前句子作主語。但是通常將作主語的動詞不定式或不定式短語放在謂語後面，而在主語位置用“it”作形式主語(有時在不定式的前面還會用for sb.表示不定式的邏輯主語)。如：To help animals is helping people.(幫助動物就是幫助人)/ It is very difficult (for us) to learn Chinese well.((對於我們而言)學好漢語是非常的困難)/ It took me half an hour to work out this problem.(解出這道題花了我一個小時的時間)

④ 動詞不定式可以作謂語動詞(及物動詞)的賓語。

[A] 及物動詞+不定式一般形式：

謂語動詞(vt.) +不定式

(作賓語) [說明] want(想) / try(試圖) / decide(決定) / would like(想要) / hope(希望) / love(喜愛) / learn(學會) / afford(提供) / agree(同意) / fail(失敗、未能) / mean(意味著) / prefer(寧願) / wish(希望) + to (do) (無) help(幫助) to可以省略 begin(開始) / start(開始) / hate(憎恨) 也可跟動名詞，意義變化不大 forget(忘記) / remember(記得) / like(總愛) 也可跟動名詞，意義變化較大 如：I would like to have a rest at the moment.(我現在想休息一下) / They began to search the room for the thief.(他們開始在屋子裡搜尋小偷) / He liked to have a swim in the pool near his house.(他喜愛在靠家的水塘裡面游泳) / When did you learn to speak English?(你什麼時候開始學英語的?) / Don't forget to close the door when you leave.(你離開時別忘了關門)

[比較] He forgot to turn off the light.(他忘了關燈。)(沒關) / He forgot turning off the light.(他忘記關過燈。)(關了) / Please remember to ring me up.(記得給我打電話。)(還沒打電話) / I remember calling you yesterday but you forgot.(我記得昨天給你打電話了，但是你忘記了。)(打過電話)

[B] 及物動詞+疑問詞+不定式：

謂語動詞(vt.) +wh-疑問詞+不定式 (作賓語) [說明] tell (告訴) / show (顯示) / know (知道) / ask (問) / find out (發現) / understand (明白) / wonder(疑惑) / learn(學會) / forget(忘記) / remember(記得) / teach sb.(教某人) / discuss(商討) what where

+ how + to (do)

who

which

..... 不定式疑問形式還可以作句子的主語、表語等。 如：He does not know which one to take.(他不知道該選哪個) / Tell me how to get to the station.(告訴我怎麼樣去火車站) / She asked me what to do for today's homework.(她問我今天家庭作業做什麼) / Can you teach me how to search the internet?(你能教我怎樣上網嗎?)

[C] 不定式作賓語而後面又有賓語補足語時，通常用it代替作形式賓語，而不定式則後置。如：I found it not very easy to learn to ride a bike.(我發現學騎車不很容易)

⑤ 動詞不定式可以在句子中用作定語,放在名詞或代詞後面。

[A] 記住下面的一些結構:

被修飾部分 + 不定式(作後置定語) 漢語意思 a key to lock the door 鎖門的鑰匙 a box to hold these things 裝這些東西的箱子  
give her a book to read 給她一本書讀 Is there any (+名詞/代詞) to (do)? 有...要(做的)嗎? It's time to go. 是走的時間了。/ 該走了。 Do you have any work to do? 你有工作要做嗎? I'd like something to eat. 我要點兒吃的。  
I have nothing to say. 我沒有話要說。 Would you like something to drink? 你要點兒喝的嗎? [B] 在這種情況下,如果不定式動詞是不及物動詞,則後面必須加介詞。如:

They could not find a place to live in.(他們找不到住的地方)/ Please give me a chair to sit on.(請給我一張椅子坐坐)/ He has got a writing brush to write with.((他找到了寫字的毛筆)

⑥ 動詞不定式可以在句子中用作狀語,有下列幾種情況:

[A] 放在不及物動詞(come, go, stop, finish, wait等詞)的後面。如: He came to see her yesterday.(他昨天來看望她)(表示來的目的)/ I stopped to have a rest.(我停下來休息一會兒)(表示停下來的目的)

[B] 放在完整的謂語之後(即“謂語+賓語”、“謂語+賓語+補語”、“動詞+表語”之後)。如: We cleaned the room to let him play in it.(我們打掃了房間以便讓他在裡面玩)/ I opened the window to see more clearly.(我打開窗子以便看得更清楚點兒)

[C] 有時表示目的的不定式短語可以放在句首。如: To arrive there on time, I got up one hour earlier than usual.(為了按時到達,我們比平時早起了一個小時)(表示早起的目的)

[注意] stop to do 與 stop doing 的不同。如: They stopped to have a look.(他們停下來看看)(不定式作“停下來”的目的狀語)/ They stopped looking out of the window and began to listen to the teacher.(他們停止向窗外望,開始聽老師講課)(動名詞作賓語,表示“停止”的內容)

⑦ 動詞不定式可以在句子中用作表語,限用於連系動詞之後。如: My job is to keep the goal.(我的工作就是守住球門)

⑧ 動詞不定式可以在句子中用作複合賓語中的賓語補足語。

謂語動詞(vt.) + 賓語(人/物) + 不定式 (作賓語補足語) ask(請) / tell(關照) / teach(教) / want(想要) / would like(想要) / get(讓) / help(幫) / invite(邀請) / like(喜歡) / warn(警告) / +sb. / sth. + to (do) make(使得) / let(讓) / hear(聽) / see(看) / feel(感覺) / watch(觀看) / have(使得) / help(幫助) +sb. / sth. + (do) 如: Mum asked me to help her with the cooking.(媽媽叫我幫助她做飯)/ I would like you to see my parents.(我想要你見見我的父母)/ The boss often made the workers work 14 hours a day.(老闆常讓工人們一天工作14小時)/ Now let me hear you play the violin.(現在讓我來聽你拉小提琴)

[注意] help 之後做賓補的不定式符號 to 可以省略; hear / see / feel / watch 之後的賓補用不定式與現在分詞時,含義不同,需特別注意,(參見現在分詞部分)。試比較:

I heard her crying when I walked past.(我路過時聽到她正在哭)(指當時瞬間的情況)

I sat near her and heard her sing the new song.(我坐在她附近聽她唱新歌)(指整個過程)

(3) 動名詞

① 動名詞由動詞原形加詞尾“ing”構成。動名詞有動詞的特徵,可以跟賓語,可以被

狀語修飾；它也有名詞的特徵，在句子中可以作主語、賓語(包括介詞賓語)等。動名詞加相關詞語(賓語或狀語等)構成動名詞短語。

② 動名詞可以作主語。一般可用it作形式主語而將動名詞短語後移。如：Learning English all by yourself is not so easy.(自學好英語不那麼容易)(=It is not so easy learning English all by yourself.)

③ 動名詞可以作賓語。

[A] want / need之後用動名詞時，含有被動意思。如：Your car needs repairing badly.(你的車急需修理。)(被修)My hair needs cutting.(我要理髮。)(頭髮被理)

[B] remember / forget / stop / finish之後用動名詞時，與用不定式含義不同。如：I forgot to write a letter to him.(我忘了給他寫封信)(根本沒寫) / I forgot writing a letter to him.(我忘了給他寫過信)(寫了卻忘了) / They stopped to look back.(他們停下來向後看)(停下的目的是向後看) / They stopped looking back.(他們停止向後看)(不向後看了)

[C] enjoy / mind / keep / hate/ go等詞一般用動名詞作賓語。如：Do you mind my closing the door?(把門關上你介意嗎?) / She hates travelling by air.(她討厭坐飛機旅行) / They went swimming every afternoon.(他們每天下午去游泳) / I enjoy walking around the town.(我喜歡在鎮上轉悠)

[D] like / love / start / begin / learn後面用動名詞時，與用不定式意思相近或相同。如：We began to study English when we were at primary school.(我們在小學時就開始學英語了) / We began studying English when we were at primary school. (我們在小學時就開始學英語了)

④ 動名詞可以作表語，此時特別注意不要與現在進行時混淆。如：My job is putting these parts together.(我的事情是把這些部件拼起來) / I am putting these parts together.(我正在把這些部件拼起來)

⑤ 動名詞與現在分詞構成相同，但是含義不同，動名詞主要表示事情，而現在分詞則主要表示進行著的動作。如：Eating too much is not good for your health. (動名詞短語，作主語) / Seeing is believing.(動名詞短語，分別作主語和表語) / He ran after a moving bus and got onto it.(現在分詞，作定語) / His father saw him sitting on some eggs.(現在分詞，作賓補)

(4)分詞：包含現在分詞和過去分詞。(高中學習重點)

① 主要區別：現在分詞一般有主動的意思或表示動作正在進行的意思；過去分詞有被動或動作已經完成的意思。分詞可以有自己的賓語或狀語。

② 分詞或分詞短語在句子中作定語、狀語和複合賓語等。

[A] 作定語：分詞作定語時，一般要放在修飾的名詞之前，分詞短語作定語時，則要放在所修飾的名詞之後。如：I have got a running nose.(我流鼻涕) / The woman running after the thief shouted very loudly,“Stop the thief!”(跟著小偷追的婦女大喊：捉小偷！) / Yesterday I met a man called Mr. Black.(昨天我遇見了一個名叫布萊克先生的人) / He only gave me a broken glass,so I was very angry with him.(他只給了我一個壞玻璃杯，所以我很生他的氣)

[B] 現在分詞可以作下列動詞的賓語補足語。(參考不定式作賓語補足語)

謂語動詞(vt.) 賓語 賓語補足語 keep(保持) / see(看到) /

hear(聽到) / watch(注意到) / feel(感覺到) sb./sth. (doing) 如：Mum kept me working all the week.(媽媽讓我一個星期都在工作) / When I entered the room,I saw Jack eating a big pear.(我進入房間時看到傑克正在吃一隻大梨子) / In the dark I felt something very cold moving on my foot.(黑暗之中我感到有個冷的東西在我的腳上移動)

[C] 現在分詞可以作狀語，表示伴隨情況。如：She came into the classroom,holding a

pile of papers in her hand.(他走進教室,手上抓著一摞紙)/ I am very busy these days getting ready for the coming oral test.(這些日子我正忙著準備即將來到的口語考試)

[D] 過去分詞可以作表語,放在連系動詞後面,但要注意不要與被動語態混淆,“主系表”主要表示狀態,而被動語態則表示動作。常用過去分詞作表語的結構有: be worried (焦慮) / be pleased (高興) / be tired (疲勞) / get dressed (打扮好) / get lost (迷路) / get caught (遭遇) / become frustrated (沮喪) / become interested in (對...感興趣)等等。例略。

[E] 過去分詞可以作賓語補足語。如: I had my hair cut this morning.(今天早上我讓人給我理了發)(注意: have sth. done表示動作由別人來做,而have done sth.則為現在完成時的結構,兩個結構不可以混淆)

#### 8、動詞用法辨析:

(1)“Why not+動詞原形+...?”(幹嘛不.....?)是簡略句,完全形式是: Why don't you + 動詞原形+...?如: Why not go and have a look?(幹嘛不去看看?)/ Why not try it once again?(為什麼不再試試?)

(2) seem(好象)的用法: 記住幾個結構: ①sb./sth. + seem + (to be+)形容詞+...; ②sb./sth. + seem + like +...; ③sb/sth + seem + to (do); ④It seems that + 從句。如: He seemed (to be) very happy when he was called by the headmaster. (被校長叫到名字時他好象很開心) / It seems that nobody else could do such a foolish thing except Jim. (除了吉姆好象沒有什麼人會做出如此愚蠢的事情來)

(3) be afraid(害怕)的用法: 記住幾個結構: ①be afraid of sth; be afraid of (doing); ②be afraid to (do); ③be afraid that+從句。如: She is a little afraid of snakes.(她有點怕蛇)/ Don't be so afraid to stay at home alone at night.(別害怕晚上一個人在家)/ I'm afraid that somebody will take his place because of his serious mistakes.(恐怕有人要取代他了,因為他犯了那麼大的錯誤)

(4) be sorry(抱歉)的用法: 記住幾個結構: ①be sorry for (sth); ②be sorry for (doing sth); ③be sorry to (do); ④be sorry that+從句。如: I am very sorry for keeping you waiting so long.(不好意思讓你久等了)I am sorry to trouble you.(對不起,麻煩你了)/ I am sorry (that) he isn't here at the moment.(恐怕他現在不在)

(5) be sure (確信)的用法: 記住幾個結構: ①be sure of (sth); ②be sure to(do); ③be sure that+從句。如: She told me many times that she was sure to come.(她給我講過多次她一定會來的) / Are you sure of your answer?Maybe it's wrong.(你對你的答案有把握嗎?也許是錯的。)/ I am sure that Dad will help me with the job.(我確信爸爸會幫著我做這件事情的)

(6) make 與do的用法: 一般情況下表示進行活動或者做工作用do,表示創造建構某事物用make。如: I don't know what to do.(我不知道該幹什麼)/ I'm not going to do any work.(我不準備做什麼)/ My father and I once made a boat.(我和我爸曾經做過一隻船)

此外還要記住一些固定說法: do good / harm / business / one's best / a favour..... make a decision / an effort / a mistake / a noise / a phone call / money / war / the bed / sure,...

(7)put on、wear、have...on、be in、try on、dress的用法: put on強調“穿、戴”這個動作過程,wear則表示“穿著、戴著”這一狀態,have+衣物+on主要表示狀態,be in(+顏色/衣物)也是表示一個狀況,dress(+人)表示“給...人穿衣”。如: Please put on your new shoes.(請穿上你的新鞋)/ The twins are wearing the same clothes.(雙胞胎穿著相同的衣服)/ Today she has an overcoat on.(今天她穿著一件大衣) / Do you know the woman who is in black?(你認識那個身穿黑衣的女人嗎?)/ Dad is dressing Tom

now.(爹正在給湯姆穿衣)

[注意]dress與wear或put on的區別:wear或put on常用衣物作賓語,而dress常用人作賓語。表示給自己穿衣時常用“get dressed”或“dress oneself”表達。be dressed in與wear基本同義。dress up意為“穿上盛裝、喬裝打扮”。如:Could you dress the baby for me?(你能替我給寶寶穿衣嗎?)/ He is eight but can't dress himself.(他八歲了,還不會穿衣服)/ She was dressed in a red coat.(她穿著一件紅上衣)/ Do I have to dress up to go to Jim's party?(我得穿上好衣服去參加吉姆的聚會嗎?)

(8)like、love與enjoy的用法:三個詞都含有“喜歡”的意思,但是,like和enjoy後面跟動名詞,love後面一般跟動詞不定式love to do sth.。like後面有時跟動詞不定式,表示一種習慣或嗜好(往往與具體的時間或地點有關)。enjoy後面還可以加名詞、反身代詞,表示“享受...樂趣;玩得開心”。如:Do you like shopping?(你喜歡購物嗎?)/ He likes to have a swim when he gets home every afternoon(習慣,與具體的時間有關).(每天下午放學後他總愛遊個泳)/ They love to sing foreign songs.(他們喜愛唱外國歌曲)/ Did you enjoy yourself at the party?(在聚會上你玩得開心嗎?)/ He enjoys living in China.(他喜歡在中國生活)

(9)study、learn的用法:study主要表示“學習、研究”,指過程;而learn主要表示“學會”,指結果。表示“學”時可以互換。如:How many subjects do you study?(你學多少門課程?)/ Have you learned it yet?(這個你學過了嗎?)/ How long have you studied/learned English?(你學英語多久了?)

learn還可以表示“聽說”,如:He learned the musician himself was in town.(他聽說音樂家本人就在城裡)

(10)think、want、would like的用法:三個詞都含有“想”的意思,但think指“思考、考慮”,want指“想要、願望、企圖”,would like指“想要”,think後面一般跟介詞短語或從句,want和would like後面跟名詞或動詞不定式。如:Do you think that China will become a developed country in 40 years?(你認為中國會在40年後成為發達國家嗎?)/ I am thinking of the money I once lent to Li Min.((我正在想著以前借給黎敏的錢)/ What do you really want to say?(你到底想幹什麼?)/ Which of these cakes would you like (to have)?(這些餅子中你想吃哪些?)

(11)look for、search...for、find、find out的用法:前面兩個詞語表示動作過程,後面兩個表示結果,look for指“尋找”不見的或丟失的東西,但還沒有找到;search...for...指“為找...而搜尋...”;find指“找到”了東西;find out主要指“查明一個事實真相”。如:Hey, Monkey, what are you looking for in the cupboard?(嘿,猴兒!你在廚子裡面找什麼呢?)/ Have you found the lost key to your car?(你找著丟失的車鑰匙了嗎?)/ The soldiers were searching the room for the spy when they heard a loud noise.(士兵們正在房間裡面搜尋間諜突然間他們聽到了衣聲巨響)/ Let's try to find out who broke the window.(讓我們查查誰把窗子打破了)

[注解] find的幾個結構:find sb. sth.“為某人找到...”,find sth./sb. + adj./n.“發覺某人是...”,find it +adj. + to do...(或+賓語從句)“發現(做.....)如何”。如:His mother found her daughter a very clever girl.(他的母親發現她的女兒是個聰明的女孩)(名詞作補語補足語) / You can easily find it not good for your health to eat cold food.(你很容易就會發現吃冷食對你的身體是不利的)

(12)listen to、hear的用法:兩個詞與聽覺有關,listen to指“聽”這一過程,hear指“聽到”這一結果。如:Are you listening to me, Jim? Yes, I have heard your words. (吉姆,你在聽我說嗎?是的,你的話我全聽見了)

(13)look、see、watch、read的用法:四個詞均與眼睛有關,look指放眼去“看”(不管是否看得到),指“看”的過程;see指“看見”這一結果,有時see還引申為“明白”,表示“看”時後面加“電影”等詞,see the film/film;watch指專注的看,含有“注視、監視”

之義,後面常跟“電視、比賽”等詞; read限制為看書面材料,譯為“看、閱讀”,後面跟“書、報紙、雜誌”等詞。如: What are you looking at?(你在看什麼?)/ Please look at the blackboard. (請看黑板)/ Let me go to see the film, mum, will you? (媽媽,讓我去看電影吧,好嗎?)/ He won't feel well until he finishes watching the football match. (要看完了足球賽他才會感覺好些)/ Reading gives us knowledge.(閱讀給我們知識)

(14)hear、hear of、hear from、learn的用法: hear“聽說”,後面可以跟名詞、代詞、從句表示聽見的內容,hear of“聽說”,後面跟人,指對某人有耳聞但沒有見過面;hear from“收到.....的來信”,後面加人;learn“聽說、得知”,後面跟從句,含義與hear相似。如: I hear Mr Green is coming to see us tonight. (我聽說格林先生今晚要來看望我們)/ Have you ever heard of the man who once went to the Himalaya Mountains? (你是否聽說過那個去過喜馬拉雅山的人?)/ How often do you hear from your father? (隔多久你收到你父親的信?)/ He learned the musician himself was in town.(他聽說音樂家本人就在城裡)

(15)speak、talk、say、tell的用法: 四個詞與“說”有關。speak“講話、發言、演說”,是不及物動詞,涉及人時要加介詞to,speak作及物動詞時後面跟語言名稱;talk“談話、閒談”,是不及物動詞,涉及人時用介詞with、to等,涉及事情時後面跟介詞about等;say是及物動詞,後面跟名詞、代詞、從句等,表示說的內容;tell是及物動詞,後面首先要跟人,然後再跟從句或者介詞短語等。如: Do you speak English? (你講英語嗎?)/ Who spoke at the meeting? (誰在會上發了言?)/ Our teacher is talking to Lin Tao's parent. (我們的老師正在跟林濤的家長講話)/ Can you say it in English? (你能用英語說出它嗎?)/ Please tell me something about the strange flying object. (請跟我講講那個奇怪的飛行物的事情吧)

(16)be able to(do)、can的用法: can是情態動詞,有許多含義,表示“可能、可以、會”等意思,只有①現在式can和過去式could兩種形式;be able to表示能力上“會”,有多種時態形式,to後面跟動詞原形,有時可以與can/could互換。如: Can you speak English? (你會說英語嗎?)/ He couldn't(wasn't able to) swim when he was 12. (他十二歲時不會游泳)

表示成功的做了某事時, 只能用be able to.如:

He was able to flee Europe before the war broke out.

(17)there be、have的用法: 兩個詞都可以譯為“有”,但是,have表示的是“擁有”,主語必須是人或者物;there be表示“存在”的概念,主語在there be之後。如: How many brothers and sisters do you have? I have only one brother. (你有多少兄弟? 我只有一个兄弟。)/ How many chairs and desks are there in their classroom? There is none. (他們教室裡有多少張桌椅? 一張也沒有。)

[注解]there be sb./sth doing與there be sb./sth to do 有所不同: 用doing表示一個正在發生的事情,而用to do 則表示尚未做的即將要做的動作。如: Look! There is a dog lying on the stairway. / Take your time. There is nothing for you to do tonight.

(18)borrow、lend、keep的用法: 表示“借”的三個詞,borrow“借進”、lend“借出”都是一次性動作,不可以和表示一段的時間狀語連用;keep“保存”用來表示借一段時間。如: I have lost the book I borrowed from my teacher. What can I do? (我丟掉了從老師那裡借來的書)/ How long have you kept my dictionary,eh?For more than two months! (呃,我的字典你借了多久了? 兩個多月了!)

(19)bring、take、carry、send、lift的用法: bring指從遠處“拿來”,是從別處把東西帶到這裡來,如: Can you bring me that glass? 你能給我拿那個杯子嗎? ;take指從面前“拿走”,把人或物拿到別處,不是說話的地方,如: Please take the letter to the post office.; carry指一般的搬運,不涉及方向;send主要指“送、派遣、寄”;lift指把東西由低向高“提起、拎起”。例略。



(20)hope、wish的用法:兩個詞都表示“希望”,但是,hope表達有把握或信心實現的事情,後面直接跟動詞不定式或者賓語從句,不可以跟動名詞或作賓語補足語的不定式;wish表達實現的可能性不大的事情,後面跟名詞、賓語從句(用過去時)或者作賓語補足語的不定式。如:We all hope to see him very soon. (我們全都希望儘快見到他)/ I hope it will be fine tomorrow so that we can go out. (我希望明天天好,這樣我們就能出去了。)/ How I wish it was not raining at the moment!(我多麼希望此刻不在下雨!)(事實上天正在下雨,虛擬語氣)

(21)take、spend、pay、cost的用法:①看主語 ②看結構

spend的賓語通常是金錢或時間,句型:sb.+(spend)+時間/金錢+on sth / (in) doing sth. ;

take的主語通常是事情,句型:sth./It + (take)+sb.+時間+to do...。(如果是動作則常用it作形式主語將動詞不定式後移);

cost的賓語通常是時間、金錢、力氣,句型:sth. +(cost)+sb.+時間/金錢/力氣. ;

pay的賓語通常是金錢,句型:sb.+(pay)+金錢+for+事物.

如:She spent the whole night reading the novel. (她花了一個晚上看那本小說)/

This job will take me two days.=It will take me two days to do the job. (做這件事情要我兩天的時間)/ How much does a house like this cost? (像這樣的房子要花多少錢?)/ I paid him twenty dollars for the book.. (我花了20元從他那兒買了書)

(22)begin、start的用法:begin在大多數情況下可以替代start,(反義詞是end),後面接不定式或動名詞時區別不大,但是start還可以表示“開始、出發、啟動”,反義詞是stop;某事停止後再重新開始一般用start.如:When did you begin/start to learn English? (你什麼時候開始學英語的?)/ They started getting in the crops after the rain stopped. (雨停後他們開始收割莊稼) / This time he could not start his car. (這次他沒法啟動他的汽車)

(23)arrive in/at、reach、get to的用法:arrive是不及物動詞,到達具體地點(單位,學校,家,車站)時後面加介詞at, The new teacher arrived at our school. We arrived at the station just now,到達一個大的地方(國家、地區、城市)時後面加介詞in, 如: We arrived in Paris yesterday, arrive後面可以直接跟地點副詞here/there/home等; get表示“到達”時是不及物動詞,涉及地點(無論大小)時後面加to,get後面可以直接跟地點副詞here等; reach是及物動詞,後面直接跟地點名詞。如:He arrived in San Francisco last Sunday. (上個星期天他抵達三藩市)/ How did you get there in the night? (你是怎樣在夜間到達那裡的?)/ We hurried all the way and reached the station just five minutes before the train left. (我們一路狂奔在火車啟動前5分鐘到達車站)

(24)be made of、be made from、be made into、be made in、be made by、be made for的區別:be made of指從製成品中可以看出原材料,而be made from則指從製成品中看不出原材料,口語中都可以換成be made out of。be made into表示“被製成.....”,be made in表達被製造的地點,be made by表達製造的人,be made for表達被製造的目的。如:This kind of paper is made from bamboo. (這種紙是由竹子生產的)/ The desk is made of wood and metal. (桌子是鐵和木頭打的)/ A lot of paper has been made into paper birds. (許多紙被折疊成了小鳥)/ Computers are made in these cities. (電腦是在這幾個城市製造的)/ This kite was made by Uncle Wang. (這個風箏是王叔叔做的)/ A big bag was made for me to hold my waste things.(一隻大包做好了讓我裝廢物)

(25)be used for、be used to、used to、get used to的區別:be used for + 名詞/代詞或動名詞, be used to + 動詞原形,表示兩個短語意思相近,表示“用於...”。used to + 動詞原形,表示“過去常常”,否定式可以是“didn't use to”也可以是“usedn't to”;

get/be used to + 動名詞,表示“習慣於....”。如:A knife can be used for cutting things.(刀可以用來割東西)/ A knife can be used to cut things.(刀可以用來割東西)/ He used to borrow novels from the library when he was at school. (他上學時常常在圖書館借書)/ He is used to getting up early in the morning. (他習慣早起)(注意: be used to 表示“被用作”和“習慣於”的區別)

(26)beat,win與lose: beat (打敗),後面跟“人”,而win(贏得),後面跟“比賽、競賽”等。如: Who won at last? (最後誰贏了?)/ Class Three beat us 5-0. (三班以5:0打敗了我們)/ I am sure to win the match. (我一定能贏得比賽)

而lose則表示“輸了”,常用句型: lose sth. to sb. 如: Unluckily we lost the match to Class Three. (不幸的是我們比賽輸給了三班)

(27)grow、plant、keep的區別: plant著重講“栽、種植”這個動作,grow則指種植以後的“栽培”、“管理”,而keep則主要指“餵養”、“贍養”一個人或者動物。如: He grew vegetables in his garden. (他在園子裡種菜)/ I planted ten trees last year, but four of them died. (去年我栽了10棵樹,但是死了4棵)/ Old women enjoy keeping cats or dogs to kill the time. (老年的婦女喜歡養貓養狗打發時間)

(28)fall、drop的區別: fall指東西由高處向下墜落,不及物動詞;也可以作連系動詞,意思是“變得,進入某種狀態”。drop表示物體由高處往低處落下,不及物動詞;或讓物體落向低處,及物動詞。如: The man fell off the tractor and hurt himself. (那個人從拖拉機上摔下來跌傷了)/ Soon after they touched the pillows they fell (系動詞) fast asleep. (他們頭挨枕頭不久就睡著了)/ He felt as if he had to drop maths. (他覺得似乎要放棄數學)/ He dropped a letter into the mail-box. (他向郵箱裡丟了一封信)

(29)join、join in、take part in的區別: join多指參加組織、團體、黨派等,後面跟人時表示和某人一起參加某項活動;join in指參加某項遊戲或活動;take part in多指參加群眾性的活動、運動、會議等。如: He joined the army in 2001. (他2001年參軍)/ They joined me in congratulating you. (他們和我一起向你祝賀)/ Do join us in the game. (千萬參加我們的比賽) / He took an active part in the students' movement in the 1940s. (在二十世紀40年代他積極參加學生運動)

(30)beat、hit、strike的用法區別: beat指“連續不斷地打擊;(心臟的)跳動”;hit指“一次性地撞擊、命中”;strike與hit基本同義,還可以理解為“劃(火柴)、給.....深刻的印象”。如: The man looks dead, but his heart is still beating weakly. (那個人看上去死了可心臟還在微弱地跳動) / He hit the ball so hard that it flew over their heads and fell into the lake. (他踢球的勁太大球飛過他們的頭頂落入水中) / He went into the room and struck a match(火柴). (他走進房間劃著了一根火柴)

(31)carry on、carry out的區別: carry on表示“進行、繼續”;carry out表示“執行、貫徹”。如: I will carry on the work. (我會繼續工作)/ I have some difficulties in carrying out his orders. (對於執行他的命令我有問題)

(32)be amazed與be surprised的區別: be amazed“感到驚訝”,指人對某個不可能(可能是自認為的)發生卻實際發生了的事情感到極其的訝異;be surprised“感到吃驚”指人對突發的事件感到驚訝。如: When he dived deep into the sea, he was amazed at the colours of all the beautiful coral reefs. (他深潛到海中時被所有美麗的珊瑚礁驚呆了)(原先可能想不到世上會有這麼美的珊瑚) / He was very surprised when he heard a loud noise from inside the room. (聽到房間裡傳出一個很大的聲音他非常地吃驚)(突然傳出來的聲響)

(33)warn的用法: “warn sb. of/about sth”意思是“針對...而警告某人”;“warn sb (not) to do sth”意思是“告戒某人(不)要做某事”;“warn sb. + that從句”意思是“警告某人說.....”。如: They warned the passengers of thieves. (他警告路人小心竊賊) / I

warn you that you will fail in the coming exams if you are still so lazy. (我警告你：如果你還這麼懶在即將來到的考試中你會不及格的。) / He was warned not to go out in the late night. (他受到警告不要在深夜出去)

(34) think of與think about等短語的區別：think of表示“考慮、思念、認為、想起、建議”等；“think about”表示“看待、認為”，表示對某事的看法；“think much /highly /a lot of”表示“高度評價...”；“think over”表示“仔細考慮”；“think out”表示“想出”。如：The headmaster thought highly of this boy. (校長高度地評價了這個男孩) / We're thinking of going to France for our holiday. (我們在考慮去法國度假的事情) / Think it over and you will have a way. (仔細考慮就有辦法) / I cannot think of his name. I forgot it. (我想不到他的名字我忘了) / —What do you think about his composition? —Very good! (他的作文你覺得怎麼樣？很好。)

(35) agree with/ agree to / agree on等詞語用法：“agree to+動詞”表示“同意做某事”，“agree with + sb./觀點”表示“贊同...的觀點”/ agree about表示“對...話題有相同看法”/“agree to +建議”表示“同意”某人的建議，agree to your advice,“agree on + 決定”表示“贊成某人的決定”，agree on your decision。例略。

(36) deserve(應該，應得)的用法：deserve後面可以加不定式，也可以加名詞或動名詞。如：They had tried their best and they deserved to win. (他們盡力了該贏。)/ The little boy always made troubles around and deserved beating. (小男孩總是處處惹麻煩活該被打) / The girl did a good deed and deserved praise. (女孩做了好事應該受到表揚)

## 九、連接詞

1、連詞的含義：連接詞與詞、短語與短語、或引導從句的詞叫連接詞。

2、連詞的分類：連詞分為並列連接詞和從屬連接詞兩種。

1、並列連接詞連接並列的詞、短語、從句或句子。常見的並列連接詞有：and(和), but(但是), or(或者,否則), nor(也不), so(所以), however(然而,無論如何), for(因為), still(可是), as well as(也), both..and...(和...和...), not only ...but also...(不但...而且...), either... or...(或...或...), neither... nor...(既不...也不...)等。

2、從屬連接詞用於引導從句,常見的從屬連接詞有：

when(當...時候), while(正當...時候), after(在...之後), before(在...之前), since(自從), until(直到), although/though(雖然), if(假如), as(如...一樣;由於), as ...as...(和...一樣), as far as(就...而言), as long as(只要), as soon as(一...就...), even if(即使), because(因為), unless(除非), than(比...), whether(是否...), in order that...(為了), so...that...(如此...以致), so that...(以便), now that...(現在既然), by the time...(到...時候), every time...(每當), as if...(仿佛), no matter when(或whenever)(無論何時), no matter where(或wherever)(無論在哪裡)等。

[辨析]

(1) because、as、since、for的用法：because(因為)表示原因的語氣最強,常表示必然的因果關係,從句一般放在主句後面;另外,回答why的問句只能用because. as(因為)表示一般的因果關係,語氣比because弱,說明比較明顯的原因,它引導的從句可以放在句首也可以放在句尾。since(既然)表示對方已經知道、無需加以說明的原因或事實。for(因為)是並列連詞,語氣較弱,用來補充說明理由或提供一種解釋。如：He is not at school today because he is seriously ill. (他今天沒有上學因為他病得厲害) / As all of you have got here, now, let's go to the zoo. (既然大夥兒都到了我們就去動物園吧) / I will ask Lin Tao to go with me since you are very busy. (既然你很忙我就叫林濤和我一起去吧) / We must be off now for the match starts at 7:00. (我們得走了因為比賽在七點開始)

(2)if、whether的區別：表示“是否”時，if和whether同義，引導賓語從句，另外，whether還可以引導主語從句、表語從句(以及同位語從句)等名詞性從句或者讓步狀語從句；而if還可以表示“如果”，引導條件狀語從句，(主句與從句遵循主將從現的原則)。如：I don't know if/whether he will arrive on time.(我不知道他是不是會按時到達)/ I will ring you up if he arrives on time.(如果他按時到達我會給你打電話的)

[注意]下列情況只能用whether不能用if：①引導主語從句，②引導表語從句，③引導從句作介詞賓語，④引導不定式短語，⑤引導讓步狀語從句，⑥在動詞discuss之後，⑦在wonder / not sure之後，⑧在if與whether含義易混時。如：Whether it is a fine day next Sunday is still a question.(下個星期天是不是個好天還是個問題)(引導主語從句) / Please ask him whether to go there with a raincoat or not.(請問一下帶不帶雨衣去那兒)(作動詞的賓語) / Hainan is the place to be, whether it's summer or winter.(海南是個該去的地方無論冬夏)(引導讓步狀語從句)/ Please let me know whether you need my help.(請告訴我你是否需要我的說明)(引導賓語從句)(如果換成if則還可能表示“如果你需要我的說明請告知”)

(3)while、when、as的用法區別：while常表示一個較長的動作，它引導的從句動作與主句的動作是只能是同時發生的、是平行的；when可以表示較短的動作也可以表示較長的動作，主句和從句的動作可以同時發生也可以先後發生；as與上兩詞同義，可替換while和when，表示主句和從句的動作同時發生，常譯為“一邊……一邊……”。如：Please do not trouble me while I am writing my homework.(我寫作業時請不要打擾我)/ I'll go home when I have finished my job.(我幹完了活兒就回去)(不是同時發生)/ They were running quickly across the road when they heard the sound of a truck coming.(他們正快速地穿過馬路忽然聽到了卡車開來的聲音)/ As we walked in the dark street, we sang songs and talked loudly.(當我們在黑洞洞的街上走路時我們高聲地唱歌說話)

(4)till/until與not...till/until的區別：前者表示一個延續性的動作，後者表示一個才開始的動作。如：I will stay here and watch the baby until you return.(我會呆在這裡看著娃娃直到你回來)(stay這個動作一直進行到你return) / They won't go on working until they get what they think is reasonable.(他們要到獲得了他們認為合理的東西時才會繼續幹下去的)

另外till與until基本可以互換，但是在句首時只能用until，不能用till。如：Until the last minute of the match we kept playing.(我們堅持到比賽的最後一分鐘) / Not until he had finished his work did he go home.(直到做完工作他才回家)(倒裝句)

(5)though與although的區別：兩個詞都表示“雖然”，均不可以與but同時使用，但在句中可加still或yet連用。although“儘管、雖然”僅作連詞，比較正式，一般可以換為though；though“雖然、儘管、即使”，①還可以與even連用(=even if)，表示“即使、縱然”，②作副詞時意思是“然而、不過”，不能放在句首。③although不能放在句末，though則可以，用“，”隔開。如：He passed the exams although illness prevented him from going to classes.(儘管疾病使他無法上課但是他還是通過了考試) / she won't leave the TV set,even though her husband is waiting for her for the supper.(她不願離開電視機雖然丈夫在等她吃飯) / It was a quiet party. I had a good time, though.(這是個不熱鬧的聚會儘管如此我還是玩得很開心)

(6)prefer to...rather than...與prefer...to...的區別：prefer to...rather than...後面都是用動詞原形，prefer...to...都是用動名詞或名詞。如：I prefer English to Japanese.(與日語相比我更喜歡英語) / I prefer to learn English rather than learn Japanese.(與日語相比我更喜歡學英語)

初一連詞聯繫：

1.I had to go to work by taxi \_\_\_\_\_ I got up late this morning.

A. so    B. but    C. and    D. because

用and, but, so填空：

1. Jane didn't work hard last term, \_\_\_\_\_ she failed many subjects.
2. I like playing badminton, \_\_\_\_\_ my sister doesn't.
3. David got up early this morning, \_\_\_\_\_ he got to school on time.
4. Lucy bought a book on animals, \_\_\_\_\_ she liked it very much.

## 十、簡單句

1、簡單句的特點：簡單句通常只由一個主語(或並列主語)和一個謂語(或並列謂語)構成。

2、簡單句的種類：簡單句一般分為陳述句、疑問句、感歎句和祈使句四種。

3、陳述句：

用來說明一個事實的句子叫陳述句。它有肯定式和否定式兩種形式。

▲陳述句的肯定式：He is a middle school student. (他是個中學生) / I have a hammer in my hand. (我手上有把錘子) / She teaches us geography. (她教我們地理) / The new play was good enough and everybody enjoyed it. (新的話劇非常好大家都喜歡)

▲陳述句的否定式：

1) 謂語動詞如果是 be、助動詞、情態動詞時，在它們的後面加“not”。如：My brother is not a teacher. (我的弟弟不是教師) / He does not have a cousin. (他沒有堂兄弟) / I will not go there tomorrow. (明天我不去那兒) / My mother is not cooking a meal in the kitchen. (我母親現在不在廚房裡做飯) / You must not make such mistakes again. (你不該再犯類似錯誤了) / We haven't discussed the question yet (我們還沒有討論那個問題呢)。

2) 謂語動詞如果沒有上述詞語而是其他動詞時，須在它的前面加do not(don't)。如：I don't know anything about it. (此事我一無所知) / Li Ming does not feed pigs in the countryside. (李明不在農村養豬) / We didn't expect to meet her right here. (我們沒指望著在這裡見到她) / We didn't have a meeting yesterday afternoon. (昨天下午我們沒有開會)

3) 如果“have”作“有”講，也可以在它後面加not構成否定式，其形式與have got的否定式相同。如：I haven't (got) any brothers or sisters. (我沒有兄弟姐妹)

have 的否定形式：

① 當表示“有”的意思時，可以採用以下三種形式：have+not；do not+ have；have+no+ n. 如：I have not enough food to eat.= I do not have enough food to eat. =I have no enough food to eat.

② 當have為助動詞時，用“have+ not”結構。如：I have not been to Shanghai。

③ 當have既不表示“有”，也不作助動詞用時，用“do not+ have”結構。I didn't have breakfast this morning.

具體到反義疑問句中，則遵循以下原則：

a. 當have表示“有”含義時，反意疑問部分可以用have形式，也可以用do形式。

例如：

????He?has?a?book?in?his?hand, hasn't?he?

????He?has?a?book?in?his?hand, doesn't?he?

b. 當陳述部分的動詞是have“有”的否定形式時，反意疑問部分是用have形式還是用do形式，取決於陳述部分的動詞形式。例如：

????You?haven't?a?car, have?you?

????You?don't?have?any?money?with?you, do?you?

c.當have不表示“有”含義而表示其他含義時，反意疑問句則必須用do的形式。例如：

????We?had?a?good?time?in?the?vacation, didn't?we?

????He?has?his?breakfast?at?seven?everyday,?doesn't?he?

????You?have?to?get?up?early?tomorrow, don't?you?

[注意]

①句子中如果有all、both、very much/well等詞時，用not一般構成部分否定，如果要完全否定，則通常使用none、neither、not... at all等；All of them went there.→None of them went there. (他們全都去了那裡→他們全都沒去那裡)

②句子中含有little、few、too(太)、hardly、never、neither、nor、seldom等詞時，則視為否定句。如：Few people live there because life there is very hard. (幾乎沒有人生活在那裡因為那裡的生活太艱難了)

③陳述句(主語+謂語+其他)在口語中可以直接表示疑問，表示驚訝或明知故問。如：That's your boss?(那就是你的老闆？！)

④陳述句一般情況下應使用正常的語序，即：主語+謂語+其他。但是有時會倒裝，詳見“倒裝句”。

⑤所有的從句一律使用陳述句語序，即在連接詞後採用“主語+謂語+其他”的順序。如：The old man told me that he would live here for ten more years before he returns home. (老人告訴我說他還要在這兒住幾年然後回家)/ Could you tell me who you saw at the party last night?(能告訴我在聚會上你都看見了誰嗎？)

4、疑問句：

▲一般疑問句：提問所述情況是否符合事實，要求用是還是不是，對還是錯(用“yes”或“no”)來回答的疑問句叫做一般疑問句。

1)一般疑問句構成：句中謂語動詞是be、情態動詞時，則將它們(提前)放到主語前面。(即把主語和be、情態動詞調換位置)，即“be/情態動詞+主語+----”如：Is he an engineer?(他是工程師嗎？)/ Have you got today's newspaper?(你有今天的報紙嗎？)(特殊情況)/ Shall we go to see a film this evening?(我們今晚去看電影好嗎？)/ Can you explain it?(你能解釋它嗎？)/ Is there any fish for supper?(晚飯有魚嗎？)/ Would you like to go out for a walk?(你想出去散步嗎？)

謂語動詞如果沒有上述詞語而是其他動詞時，則在主語前面加助動詞do / does / did，原來的謂語動詞改為原形，即“do+主語+動詞原形”。如：Do you get up at six every morning?(你天天早晨六點起身嗎？)/ Does she study hard?(她學習努力嗎？)/ Did you go there yesterday?(昨天你去那兒了嗎？)

2)一般疑問句的回答：

一般疑問句通常用簡略形式來回答。如：

Will you join us in playing basketball?(你加入我們打籃球好嗎？)—Yes, we will.(是的我們會。)/ —No, we won't.(不我們不會。)

Have you got today's newspaper?(你有今天的報紙嗎？)—Yes, I have.(是的有。)/ —No, I haven't.(不沒有。)

回答時所用的時態應和問句裡的時態一致。

[注意] 回答must或者may開頭的疑問句要小心，參見情態動詞有關內容。

3)一般疑問句的否定結構：be/助動詞/情態動詞+not+主語+---- 或：be/助動詞/情態動詞+主語+not+----如：

Will he not come?=Will not he come?(他難道不來嗎？)/ Isn't your sister a Party member?=Is your sister not a Party member?(你的姐姐不是黨員嗎？)/ Don't you like the play?=Do you not like the play?

否定疑問句並不單純的表示提問，它常帶有強烈的感情色彩，而且完全式比簡略

式所表達的語氣更強烈：

①常帶有驚異，責難或讚歎的語氣，如：Haven't you read the newspaper? 你沒看過這份報紙？②有時暗示提問者期待著肯定的回答，如：Shouldn't we start now? 我們是不是該動身了？Wasn't it an interesting film? 那部電影不是很有趣嗎？③有時表示邀請或建議，如：Wouldn't you go with me? 你不和我一起去嗎？Won't you have a cup of coffee? 你不喝杯咖啡嗎？

注意：這種否定結構的疑問句的回答與漢語的習慣不同。如果回答是肯定的，就用“yes+肯定結構”；如果回答是否定的，就用“no+否定結構”。(情況與反意問句類似。)如：

Can't he answer the question? (他不能回答這個問題嗎？)

—Yes, he can. (不，他能回答這個問題。) —No, he can't. (是的，他不能回答這個問題。)

(不管怎麼問，如果事實上是“是的”，則用yes，如果事實上是“不是，不能做某件事的”，則說“no”。)

▲特殊疑問句：詢問其語句中所缺失的部分，或者說，是要求得到暫時不知道的資訊：什麼，哪裡，怎麼樣，多少，等等。

特殊疑問句是提問實質內容的(要求得到有實質內容回答的，而不簡單的回答是否)。特殊疑問詞，就是用來代替句子中缺失的東西——你要詢問的東西的。

What?? +??? is it? ???

Who??? +??? is your teacher?

從這裡也看到了，不管從語法角度，還是實際理解角度，如果單是後面的一般疑問句，它是不完整的。

1)特殊疑問句結構是：疑問詞+一般疑問句+-----？

疑問代詞+一般疑問句+？除who以外的疑問代詞短語 疑問副詞 如：What do you want? (你要什麼？)/ Who(m) are you looking for? (你在找誰？)/ Whose magazine is this? (這是誰的雜誌？)/ Which class are you in? (你在哪班？)/ When did you get up this morning? (你今早什麼時候起身的？)/ Where have you been? (你到哪兒去了？)/ Why did he go to bed so early? (他為什麼這麼早睡覺？)/ How did you go there? (你是怎麼去的那兒？)

非重點，可以省略：但是，“who”引出的詢問主語或主語部分相關詞的特殊疑問句的結構與陳述句詞序相同：如：Who is dancing over there? (誰在那邊跳舞？)，Who dances best in your class? 班級裡誰跳舞最好？

有時“what”，“which”，“whose”也可以引出與陳述句詞序相同的特殊疑問句。如：

What is on the wall? (什麼東西在牆上？/牆上有什麼？)/ Which is yours? (哪個是你的？)/ Whose book is in your bag? (誰的書在你的書包裡？)(謂語動詞是be時)

[注意]從陳述句改為特殊問句時，先將剔除掉劃線部分的句子改為一般問句，再將(劃線)提問部分更改為疑問詞置於句首，特別要注意助動詞的使用！如果只對主語或主語的修飾詞提問，那麼只需要將疑問部分改為疑問詞即可。

2)常用疑問代詞和疑問副詞：

疑問代詞：who, whom, whose, which, what,

疑問副詞：when, where, why, how,

how構成的短語：how many (多少個)(獨立用；或跟可數名詞)，how much (多少)(獨立用；或跟不可數名詞)，how old (多大年紀)，how far (多遠)，how often (多常)，how long (多久，多長)，how soon (多久以後)，how many times (多少次)，等等。

3)特殊疑問句有時也用否定式。如：Why don't you ask Jim instead? (常縮略為Why not...?) (你為什麼不轉請Jim呢？)

4)特殊疑問句疑問部分有時可以有兩個以上的疑問詞。如：When and where were you born? (你是何時何地出生的？)

5) 疑問詞如果是介詞的賓語, 則該介詞可以在句首, 也可以在句尾。如: What do you want a computer for? = For what do you want a computer? (你幹嘛要一台電腦呢?)

▲反意疑問句: 反意疑問句表示對陳述句所說的事實提出相反的疑問, 要求對方用“yes”或“no”來進行回答。

1) 構成: 陳述句+附加問句。由兩部分組成: 前一部分是陳述句, 後一部分是疑問句, 它是由be, have, 助動詞或情態動詞+主語構成。如果陳述句是肯定結構, 反意疑問句須用否定結構; 反之, 陳述句如果是否定結構, 反意疑問句須用肯定結構。反意疑問句的兩部分, 必須保持人稱和時態的一致; 反意疑問句的回答有時會和漢語不同。

陳述句部分      附加問句部分      注意點 肯定陳述句 否定的簡短一般問句 當陳述句部分含有“是”動詞、“有”動詞、情態動詞和助動詞時, 簡短問句中沿用該詞; 否則就使用do/does//did. 否定陳述句 肯定的簡短一般問句 如: He is old, isn't he? (他老了不是嗎?) / The man went away, didn't he? (那個男人走開了不是嗎?) / He isn't old, is he? (他不老是嗎?) / He never went there, did he? (他從沒有去過那裡是嗎?)

2) 反意問句的回答:

無論哪種形式的反意問句, 回答時要遵循: “Yes,+肯定式”或者“No,+否定式”

如: The man went away, didn't he?(那人走開了, 不是嗎?)

——Yes, he did.(是的, 他走了。)/ No, he didn't.(不, 他沒有走。)

The man never went there, did he?(這人從來不去那裡, 是嗎?)

——Yes, he did.(不是呀, 他去的。)/ No, he didn't.(是呀, 他不去。)

特殊句型:

1. 祈使句。祈使句後一般加上will you或won't you構成反義疑問句, 用will you多表示“請求”, 用won't you多表示提醒對方注意。例如:

let引導的祈使句有兩種情況: ①let's---, 後的反義疑問句用shall we或shan't we。

如: Let's go home, shan't we? 回家吧, 好嗎? ②let us/me--- 後的反義疑問句用will you或won't you。如: let me have a try, won't you?

其他祈使句都用will you或won't you回答。

2. 反意疑問句的陳述部分含有由un-, im-, in-, dis-, 等否定意義的首碼構成的詞語時, 陳述部分要視為肯定含義, 問句部分用否定形式。

①Your father is unhappy, isn't he? (不能用is he?)

②The man is dishonest, isn't he? (不能用is he?)

③It is impossible to learn English without remembering more words, isn't it?(不能用is it?)

3. 反意疑問句的陳述部分帶有little, few, never, hardly, seldom,

not, no, nobody, nothing, none, neither等否定意義的詞時, 問句部分用肯定式。如:

①She never tells a lie, does she? (不用doesn't she?)

②He was seldom late, was he? (不用wasn't he?)

4. 反意疑問句的陳述部分為I am.....時, 問句部分雖然也可用“am not I”, 但習慣上用aren't I? 表示。如: I am a very honest man, aren't I?

5. 反意疑問句的陳述部分為I(We)第一人稱 think(believe, suppose, consider) + that從句時, 問句部分的動詞及主語與that從句內的動詞和主語保持一致。如: ①I

think that he has done his best, hasn't he?

②We think that English is very useful, isn't it? (不用don't we?)

6. 反意疑問句的陳述部分為I(We) don't think(believe, suppose, consider)+ that從句



時，從句為否定意義，問句部分的動詞和主語仍與that從句保持一致且用肯定式。如：①I don't think that you can do it, can you? (不用do I?)

②We don't believe that the news is true, is it? (不用do we?)

7.反意疑問句的陳述部分為非第一人稱主語+ think(believe, suppose, consider) + that從句時，問句部分的動詞和主語與陳述部分的主句動詞和主語保持一致。如：

①They all think that English is very important, don't they? (不用isn't it?)

②He didn't think that the news was true, did he? (不用wasn't/ was it?)

8.反意疑問句的陳述部分為主語+said( told, reported, asked.....) + that從句時，問句部分的動詞和主語與陳述部分的主句動詞和主語保持一致。如：①They said that you had finished your work, didn't they? (不用hadn't you)

②Kate told you that she would go there, didn't she? (不用wouldn't she?)

9.陳述部分的主語為不定代詞something, anything, nothing, everything時，問句部分的主語用it。如：

①Something is wrong with the computer, isn't it?

②Nothing has happened to them, has it?

10.陳述部分的主語為不定代詞somebody(someone), anybody(anyone), nobody(no one), everybody(everyone), no, none, neither時，問句部分的主語用he或 they(通常用they)，這時問句動詞的數應和he或 they一致。如：①Someone has taken the seat, hasn't he?

②Everyone has done his best in the game, haven't they?

11.陳述部分為Let me.....時，問句部分習慣上用shall I? 或will you?形式。如：Let me have a try, shall I?(will you?)

12.陳述部分為Let us.....時，問句部分習慣上用will you?形式。如：Let us stop to rest, will you?

13.陳述部分為Let's.....時，問句部分習慣上用shall we?形式。如：Let's go home together, shall we?

14.陳述部分用上述情況以外的祈使句時，問句部分一般用will you?形式表示請求，用won't you?形式表示委婉請求或邀請(即兩種情況都可出現，不必遵循前否後肯或前肯後否的原則)。如：

①Do sit down, won't you?/ will you? ②You feed the bird today, will you?

③Please open the window, will you?(won't you?)

15.陳述部分為否定祈使句時，問句部分一般用will you?形式。如：Don't make any noise, will you?

16.陳述部分為There (Here) + be + 主語時，問句部分用be+there(here)?形式。如：

①There are two cakes on the plate, aren't there?

Here is a story about Mark Twain, isn't here?

17.陳述部分用had better +原形動詞表示建議時，問句部分用hadn't +主語?形式。

①You'd better tell him about the matter, hadn't you? ②We had better do it by ourselves, hadn't we?

18.陳述部分用used to +主語時，問句部分用didn't + 主語? 或usedn't +主語?形式。

①He used to live in the country, didn't he?/usedn't he?

②They used to be good friends, didn't they?/usedn't they?

19.陳述部分用must(may, might) + have + V-ed表示推測時，若句中帶有明顯的過去時間的狀語，問句部分動詞用過去時形式。如：

①He might have forgotten his pen in the classroom yesterday, didn't he? (不用

mightn't he?/ hasn't he?)

②You must have got up late this morning, didn't you?(不用mustn't you?/haven't you?)

20.陳述部分用must(may, might) + have + V-ed表示推測時,若句中沒有帶明顯的過去時間的狀態,問句部分動詞用現在完成時形式。如:

①Everyone must have known the death of the waitress, haven't they?(不用mustn't they?)

②You must have worked there a year ago, didn't you?(不用mustn't you?/ haven't you?)

21.陳述部分的主語為從句時,問句部分的主語一般用it代替,如:

①What he said is true, isn't it?(不用didn't he?)

②Where we will build the dam has not been decided yet, has it?(不用won't we?)

22.陳述部分的主語為動名詞或不定式時,問句的主語用it代替。如:

①To do one good deed is easy for a person, isn't it?②Skating is your favorite sport, isn't it?

23.陳述部分的主語是不定代詞one,反義疑問句的主語可以用one,也可以用you。如:One should be ready to help others, shouldn't one?

反意疑問句專題練習

1.I think they will go to town tomorrow, \_\_\_\_\_? A.do I???????? B.don't I???????? C.will they???????? D.won't they

2.I don't believe he can catch up with me, \_\_\_\_\_? A.can he????? B.can't he???????? C.do I???????????????? D.don't I

3.I'm sure that I will be well again, \_\_\_\_\_? A.am I??????? B.aren't I????????? C.will I???????????????? D.won't I

4.I am afraid that he will not come, \_\_\_\_\_? A.am I B.aren't I C.will he D.won't he

5.They don't believe you are wrong, \_\_\_\_\_? A.are you????? B.aren't you????? C.do they????????????? D.don't they

6.He thought you were Beijing, \_\_\_\_\_? A.didn't he??? B.did he????????? C.weren't you????????? D.were you

7.We told you that he would come tonight, \_\_\_\_\_? A.didn't we??? B.did we????????? C.would he???????????? D.wouldn't he

8.The reporter said the news was not true, \_\_\_\_\_? A.wasn't it????? B.didn't he?????? C.did he???????????????? D.was it

9.They suggested that he should go to work at once, \_\_\_\_\_? A.did they????? B.didn't they????? C.should he????????????? D.shouldn't he

10>Your brother has lunch at home, \_\_\_\_\_-? A.hasn't he??? B.doesn't he????? C.has he???????????????? D.does he

11.John has to get up early, \_\_\_\_\_? A.has he B.hasn't he C.does he D.doesn't he

12.She has got to get everything ready, \_\_\_\_\_? A.hasn't she?? B.has she????????? C.doesn't she????????? D.does she

13.She has never been to China, \_\_\_\_\_?A.has she B.hasn't she C.doesn't she D.does she

14.She had better tell you the news right now, \_\_\_\_\_?A.had she????? B.hadn't she????? C.did she???????????????? D.didn't she

15.They would rather not have done that last week, \_\_\_\_\_? A.would they?? B.wouldn't they? C.have they????????? D.haven't they

16.I'd rather stay here for a rest, \_\_\_\_\_?A.did I B.would I? C.didn't I D.wouldn't I

17. You ought to do it again, \_\_\_\_\_? A. ought you B. oughtn't you C. do you?  
D. don't you
18. You must do that again, \_\_\_\_\_? A. mustn't you? B. needn't you C. do you  
D. don't you
19. He must wait here, \_\_\_\_\_? A. mustn't he B. doesn't he C. shouldn't he D. does  
he
20. He must be a good worker, \_\_\_\_\_? A. mustn't he? B. needn't he C. isn't he  
D. doesn't he
21. He must have been to China twice, \_\_\_\_\_? A. hasn't he???????? B. didn't  
he???????? C. wasn't he????? D. mustn't he
22. He must have been ill last week, \_\_\_\_\_? A. hasn't he???????? B. didn't  
he???????? C. wasn't he????? D. mustn't he
23. He must have known you during the war, \_\_\_\_\_? A. hasn't he????????  
B. didn't he???????? C. wasn't he????? D. mustn't he
24. He must have known the result already, \_\_\_\_\_? A. hasn't he???????? B. didn't  
he???????? C. wasn't he????? D. mustn't he
25. There used to be a temple here, \_\_\_\_\_? A. didn't there????? B. did  
there???????? C. used there????? D. was there
26. They used to be good friends, \_\_\_\_\_? A. usedn't they???? B. didn't they?????  
C. used they????? D. both A and B
27. Mother usedn't to dress the baby, \_\_\_\_\_? A. didn't she?????? B. did she?????????  
C. used she???????? D. usedn't she
28. The students used to go to see him, \_\_\_\_\_? A. usedn't they???? B. didn't  
they????? C. used they?????? D. both A and B
29. Alice, you have a little more chicken, \_\_\_\_\_? A. haven't you???? B. don't  
you???????? C. will you???????? D. do you
30. Hi! Alice, you have bought a little chicken, \_\_\_\_\_? A. haven't you???? B. won't  
you???????? C. will you???????? D. have you
31. You two had breakfast just now, \_\_\_\_\_? A. hadn't you????? B. didn't  
you???????? C. had you???????? D. did you
32. You two had finished the breakfast, \_\_\_\_\_? A. hadn't you????? B. didn't  
you???????? C. did you???????? D. had you
33. Neither you nor I was invited to the party, \_\_\_\_\_? A. were we???????? B. weren't  
we?????? C. was I?????????? D. were you
34. Either he or she is to clean the window, \_\_\_\_\_? A. are they???????? B. aren't  
they????? C. isn't he????????? D. isn't she
35. It is Jiao Yulu who turned Lankao into a rich district, \_\_\_\_\_? A. is it????????????  
B. isn't it?????????? C. did he???????????? D. didn't he
36. It was you who never made such mistakes, \_\_\_\_\_? A. wasn't it????? B. weren't  
you????? C. did you????????? D. didn't you
37. The little child dared not climb the tree, \_\_\_\_\_? A. dared he????? B. did  
he???????????? C. was he????????? D. does he
38. What he said is not wrong, \_\_\_\_\_? A. didn't he? B. did he C. is it D. isn't it
39. That his parents were ill made him a little worried, \_\_\_\_\_? A. weren't they?  
B. were they????? C. didn't it????????? D. wasn't it
40. He dislikes what you have said, \_\_\_\_\_? A. does he B. doesn't he C. have you  
D. haven't you

- 41.(2003Shanghai spring)If you want help—money or anything,let me know,\_\_\_\_you?  
A.don't???????? B.will???????? C.shall???????? D.do
- 42.(2002Shanghai)Mrs. Black doesn't believe her son is able to design a digital cameral,\_\_\_\_?  
A.is he???????? B.isn't he???????? C.doesn't she???????? D.does she
- 43.(2002Shanghai spring)Brian told you that there wasn't anyone in the room at that time,\_\_\_\_?  
A.was there???? B.wasn't there???? C.didn't he???????? D.did he
- 44.(2001Shanghai)I don't suppose anyone will volunteer,\_\_\_\_? A.do I????????  
B.don't I???????? C.will they???????? D.won't they
- 45.(2000Shanghai)The news that they failed their driving test discouraged him,\_\_\_\_?  
A.did they???? B.didn't they???? C.did it???????? D.didn't it
- 46.(NMET99)—Alice,you feed the bird today,\_\_\_\_???? --But I fed it yesterday.  
A.do you???? B.will you???? C.didn't you???? D.don't you

▲選擇疑問句:提出兩種或兩種以上情況,需要對方作出選擇回答的疑問句叫選擇疑問句。

1) 構成:(1) 一般疑問句 + or + 第二選項?

(2) 特殊疑問句 + 第一選項(+ 第二選項)+ or + 第三選項?

2)選擇疑問句的結構與特殊疑問句相同,即要具體回答,不可以用yes / no回答。如:

Is your friend a boy or a girl? -A girl. (---你的朋友是男孩還是女孩? ---是女孩。)/  
Which do you prefer, coffee or tea? -Tea, please. (---你要哪一樣咖啡還是茶? ---請來茶吧。)/  
Which do you like best, singing, dancing or skating? --Dancing, of course. (---唱歌、跳舞和溜冰你最喜歡哪樣? ---當然是跳舞啦!)

5、祈使句:祈使句用來表示請求、命令等。它的主語you往往不說出。

▲祈使句的肯定式: 動詞(原形) + 其他 如: Please give me a hand. (請幫忙) / Shut up! (住嘴!)

▲祈使句的否定式: Don't + 動詞原形 + 其他 如: Please don't talk in low voices. (請不要低聲講話。)/ Don't look back! (不要掉頭看。)

[注意] 以“let's”引出的祈使句的否定結構,“not”應放在“let's”後面。如: Let's not trouble him. (我們不要打擾他。)

肯定祈使句前可以用助動詞來加強語氣。如: Please do help me! (請千萬幫幫我。)

6、感歎句:感歎句用來表示喜怒哀樂等強烈感情。句末常用“!”

▲對含有形容詞的名詞短語感歎的結構通常是:

What + (a / an) + (形容詞) + 名詞+ 陳述句結構(主謂語),用來強調句子中的名詞,如:  
What a good, kind girl (she is)! (她是多麼善良的好女孩!)/ What bad weather (it is)! (天氣真糟糕!)

▲僅對形容詞或副詞進行感歎的結構通常是:How + 形容詞/副詞 + 陳述句結構(主謂語),用來強調句子中的形容詞、副詞或動詞。How carefully the old man walks! (這老人走路真小心!)/ How delicious the food is! (這食品真好吃!)/ How beautiful! (真美呀!)

▲有時,陳述句、祈使句、疑問句、一個詞或片語,也帶有一定的感情色彩,也可以成為感歎句,此時未必使用感歎句型。He is sitting on a tiger's back! (他坐在老虎的背上!)/ A nice shot! (漂亮一擊!)/ Good goal! (好球!)

## 十一、句子成分：主語、謂語、賓語、表語、定語、賓語補足語和狀語

### 1、主語：

(1)由名詞、代詞(人稱代詞用主格)、動詞不定式、動名詞等充當,說明動作是“誰”發出的,主語是句子陳述的物件,說明是誰或什麼,表示句子說的是“什麼人”,或“什麼事”,如“我寫字”中的“我”,做出寫字這個動作。“寫”則是謂語,“字”是賓語,是接受謂語“寫”這個動作的物件,因此是賓語。如:The painter painted a very nice picture. (畫家畫了一幅漂亮的畫。)/ They fought against SARS bravely. (他們勇敢地與非典搏鬥。)/ To see is to believe. (耳聽為虛眼見為實。)/ Helping animals is to help people. (幫助動物就是幫助人類。)

(2)動詞不定式或動名詞做主語時可用it代替,而不定式或動名詞移至表語或賓語之後。如:It is very comfortable to have a Class A seat during the long journey. (在長途旅行中能有個甲等座位簡直太舒服了。)/ Eating too much is bad for your health.(=It is bad for your health eating too much.) (吃得太多對你的身體不利。)(比較好看,避免頭重腳輕)

(3)口語中常見主語或“主--系”省略:(It is) nothing. ((那)沒有什麼。)/ (It) doesn't matter. ((那)沒有關係。)/ (I) thank you. ((我)謝謝你。)

(4)反意問句的附加問句,主語必須是代詞:The man looks worried, doesn't he? (這個人看上去很著急不是嗎?)/ Tigers are dangerous animals, aren't they? (老虎是危險的動物不是嗎?)

(5)祈使句一般省略主語。加主語時往往用來指定某個人。Keep the keyboards clean, children. (孩子們請保持鍵盤的清潔。)(省略了主語)/ You go there and fetch me a glass of water. (你去給我弄一杯水來。)

(6)主語一般在句首,但在問句中會處於第二位和句尾;倒裝句及there be句型主語在動詞之後。如:Computers are made in this factory. (電腦生產於這家工廠。)/ Where are they? (他們在哪兒?)/ Does the boy like staying home? (這個男孩喜歡呆在家裡嗎?)

(7)主語與謂語必須保持單、複數的一致,而謂語與表語或賓語之間沒有這一要求。Neither Jim nor Rose has passed the exam. (Jim和Rose都沒有通過考試。)/ The Chinese people are a hardworking and brave people. (中華民族是一個勤勞勇敢的民族。)

(8)主語可以由從句充當,詳見“主語從句”。

2、謂語:是對主語動作或狀態的陳述或說明,指出“做什麼”,“是什麼”或“怎麼樣”,在主語後接賓語,又稱受詞,是一個動作的接受者。

(1)由“不及物動詞”、“及物動詞+賓語”或“系動詞+表語”等構成,說明主語所表示的人物“幹什麼”或“怎麼樣”。如:

He travelled in space for the first time. (他首次在太空旅行。)/ Who teaches you English this year? (今年誰教你們的英語?)/ The pizza has gone bad. (那塊烤餡餅已經變壞。)/

(2)謂語動詞必須反映出人稱、單複數、時態等資訊,謂語動詞往往由下列詞語依序排列構成:[情態動詞]+[時態助動詞](現在完成時)+[語態助動詞](如被動語態)+[主要動詞](不一定全部出現)。(見動詞的時態和語態構成表) 記住:謂語部分第一個動詞往往是變形動詞。如:

I am sorry I am making so much noise but I have to. (對不起我發出了太大的聲音但是只能這樣。)/ He can't have finished reading the 800-page-long novel. (他不可能讀完了那本長達800頁的小說。)/ Something must be done to stop the fowl flu

from spreading out. (該採取措施防止禽流感蔓延。)

(3)謂語動詞切忌用“行為動詞1 + 原形動詞”、“be + 原形動詞”。

記住使用下列正確形式：

- ①情態動詞+原形動詞。如：You'd better go over the lesson. (你最好複習這一課。)
- ②shall/ will/ would+原形動詞。如：They should have been there once. (他們應該去過那兒。)
- ③be+現在分詞或者過去分詞。如：What are you doing this evening? (今晚你打算做什麼?) ---表示一般將來時/ Many trees have been cut down since 1970s. (自從20世紀70年代大批樹木被砍伐。)
- ④have+過去分詞。如：Many trees have been cut down since 1970s. (意思同上)
- ⑤一般時間句和否定句中：do/does/did+原形動詞。如：He does not enjoy himself very much. (他日子過的不好。)/ Did any of you see dinosaur eggs? (你們當中有誰見過恐龍蛋嗎?)
- ⑥行為動詞1+行為動詞2 (不定式、動名詞、現在分詞、過去分詞等形式)。如：He made up his mind to be a vet. (他拿定主意要做個獸醫。)/ Feeling good about yourself is essential to feeling good about life. (自尊自愛是享受生活的根本。)/ They wake up the other family members, calling, "Merry Christmas!" (他們叫醒家庭的其他成員, 呼喊著：聖誕快樂!)/ The kings of ancient Egypt had strong tombs built for themselves. (古代的埃及國王讓人給他們自己修建堅固的墳墓。)

(4)不可用形容詞、名詞、代詞、副詞、介詞短語等獨立作謂語, 必須在此之前加連系動詞。

(5)謂語動詞單複數形式：單數形式的動詞有：is, was, has, does以及“動詞+s”；複數形式的動詞有：are, were, have以及動詞原形。其他動詞不分單、複數。

謂語部分第一個動詞的形式 單數形式 複數形式 一般現在時be(是)動詞；

現在某些時態和語態的助動詞be am (單一)； are (單二)； is (單三)； are 一般過去時be(是)動詞；

過去某些時態和語態的助動詞be was (單一)； were (單二)； was;(單三) were 一般現在時have(有)動詞；

現在完成時態的助動詞have have (單一)； have (單二)； has (單三)； have 一般現在時行為動詞和助動詞do do (單一、單二)； does (單三) do 實意動詞和連系動詞的一般現在時動詞(否定和疑問句除外) 原形動詞(單一、單二)； 動詞+s /es (單三) 原形動詞 其他各時態語態的謂語動詞 單複數形式相同 記住：主語、謂語單複數必須保持一致。(參見“4、名詞或代詞作主語時和謂語之間的單複數的一致問題：”)

Air and water is necessary to us all.(空氣和水對於我們大家是必不可少的。)

(6)一般問句和反意問句的回答不使用行為動詞, 應該使用“是”動詞、情態動詞、助動詞(be, will, have, do以及變形)。如：The Olympic Games is held every other year, isn't it? ----Yes, it is.(奧運會每兩年舉辦一次, 是嗎? ----是的。)

3、賓語：又稱受詞, 是指一個動作(動詞)的接受者。賓語分為直接賓語和間接賓語兩大類, 其中直接賓語(經常指被做的人)指動作的直接物件, 間接賓語說明動作的非直接, 但受動作影響的物件。一般而言, 及物動詞後面最少要有一個賓語, 而該賓語通常為直接賓語, 有些及物動詞要求兩個賓語, 則這兩個賓語通常一個為直接賓語, 另一個為間接賓語。

(1) 由名詞、代詞(人稱代詞要用賓格)、不定式、動名詞、(賓語)從句充當, 表示動作的承受者是“誰”或者是“何物”。如：The angel also came to Joseph and told him the same thing.(那個天使同樣來到約瑟夫面前並且告訴他同樣的事情。)(代詞和名詞充當兩個賓語) / He told me that the company could not afford to pay him so much money.(他告訴我說公司付不起他那麼多的錢。)(不定式作賓語) / They enjoy

watching football games so much that they often forget their lessons. (他們如此喜愛看足球以至於常常忘記了他們的功課。)(動名詞作賓語) / I think to be a children's doctor is very rewarding. (我認為當個兒童醫生是很值得的。)(從句作賓語)

(2) 只有及物動詞或介詞才有賓語,不及物動詞沒有賓語,如果涉及到事物,則必須在不及物動詞後面加合適的介詞。Listen to the radio. (listen不是及物動詞,故加to。)/ Can you hear anything exciting?(你能聽到什麼令人興奮的消息嗎?)

(3) 賓語一般放在及物動詞或介詞的後面,但是在疑問句中,如果賓語是疑問詞,則賓語要放在句首。介詞的賓語如果是疑問詞,則可以放在介詞後或句首。如: What did he see? (他看見了什麼?) / What does he write a letter with? (他用什麼寫的信?) / With what does he write a letter? (他用什麼寫的信?)

(4) “動詞+副詞+賓語”結構中,如果賓語是代詞,則代詞必須放在“動”“副”之間。如: Please put the shoes away. (請把鞋子收起來。)/ Please put away the shoes. (請把鞋子收起來。)/ Please put them away. (請把它們收起來。)

(5) 動詞後面跟雙賓語時可以採用兩種結構:

① 動詞+間接賓語(人)+直接賓語(物)。如: He often gives me some help. (他常常幫我。)

② 動詞+直接賓語+介詞+間接賓語。注意,一般情況介詞用to,但動詞是make, buy, borrow時,介詞用for。如: Please make me a kite. (請給我做個風箏。)/ Please make a kite for me.

(6) 在“動詞+賓語+賓補”結構中,如果賓語是不定式、動名詞、賓語從句,則常用it做形式賓語,而將實際的賓語移到補語後面去。如: I found the job rather difficult. (我發覺這個工作相當難做。)/ I found it rather difficult to do the job.

(7) 賓語可以由從句充當,詳見“賓語從句”。

#### 4、表語:

(1) 說明主語的身份、性質、狀況等含義的成分,通常由形容詞、副詞、介詞短語、名詞、代詞等充當。如: He became a doctor after he left high school. (高中畢業他當上了醫生。)/ The rubber wheels are over there. (橡膠輪子在那邊。)/ He does not feel like eating anything today because he has caught a bad cold. (他今天不想吃任何東西因為他得了重感冒。)/ Who is it?(誰呀?)

(2) 表語只能放在連系動詞(如: be, look, become, turn get, grow, feel, seem) 之後,對表語進行提問的句子除外。

(3) 代詞做表語一般用主格,口語中常用賓。如: It's I. (It's me.)是我。

(4) 只能作表語的形容詞有: sorry, afraid, alone, asleep, awake, ill, well, sure, interested 等等。He was terribly sorry for his carelessness. (他很為他的粗心而歉疚。)/ Please make no noise here; the baby is asleep. (請不要發出響動,嬰兒正熟睡呢。)/ I am only interested in sitting in a boat and doing nothing at all! (我只是對獨坐孤舟無所事事感興趣。)/ I am not alone in thinking so. (並非只有我才這樣想的。)

(5) 表語也可以由從句充當,詳見“表語從句”。

#### 5、定語:

(1) 修飾名詞或代詞的成分,常由形容詞、名詞(含所有格)、代詞(物主、指示、疑問、不定)、介詞短語、不定式(短語)充當,在初三階段還學習了定語從句做定語的知識。如: Put it in the top drawer. (把它放在最上層的抽屜裡。)/ France and Switzerland are European countries. (法國和瑞士是歐洲國家。)/ His mother and father are both college teachers. (他的父母都是大學教師。)/ This is the day that I

can never forget in my life.(這是我一輩子難忘的日子。)

(2) 單詞做定語時一般放在被修飾的名詞前面,而且有一定的次序:

冠詞/

物代 年齡/形狀/

大小/溫度 色彩 來源 質地/

材料 目的/

用途 被修飾的名詞(中心詞) a

the

my

his

... old,young,... red,

yellow,

blue,

... Chinese,

English,

American,

... wooden,

woolen,

glass,

silk,

paper

... meeting,

tennis,

sports,

reading,

swimming,

... box,

shoes,

room,

pig

... long,short,

round, square... big, large,

small, little... hot, cold,

warm, cool... (3) 時間副詞(now,then,today,yesterday,...)、地點副詞

(here,there,back,in,out,home,... 作定語時放在被修飾的名詞後面。如:I could not find my way out, so I stayed there all along. (我找不到出去的路,所以就一直呆在那兒。)

(4) 介詞短語修飾名詞時只能放在名詞的後面:The monkey in the cage was caught yesterday. (籠子裡的猴子是昨天逮著的。)

(5) 形容詞修飾複合不定代詞時,往往後置。如:He remembered everything unusual. (他記得所有不尋常的事情。)

(6) 定語還可以用從句充當,詳見 定語從句。

(7) 注意:由於定語屬於修飾性的成分,因此它常歸入主語、賓語、表語之中,不作為句子的主要成分。

## 6、狀語:

(1) 說明動作“何時”、“何地”、“如何”發生,或者說明形容詞或副詞的程度,一般由



副詞、介詞短語、不定式、狀語從句等充當。如：I was not born yesterday. (我又不是昨天才出世的娃娃。)/ For many of these families a college education was something new. (對其中的許多家庭來說,大學教育是件新事物。)/ He woke up to find his house on fire. (他醒來發現房子著火了。)/ You cannot leave until your work is finished. (在你的工作被完成以前你不能離開)

(2) 副詞作狀語位置較為靈活,詳見《六·2》“副詞在句子中的位置以及作用”;介詞短語作狀語,位置基本固定,詳見《七·4》“介詞短語在句子中的位置”;不定式作狀語,一般表示目的、結果,詳見《八·7》“動詞的非謂語形式”;從句作狀語,詳見《主從複合句》的“狀語從句”。

(3) 多個狀語相連時,一般先單詞、後短語,先地點、後時間,先小概念、後大概念。如：He went out of the room at a quarter to 23:00 last night and then disappeared into the dark. (他昨夜22點3刻從房間裡出來,然後消失在黑暗之中。)/

(4) 狀語還可以用從句來充當,有時間狀語從句、地點狀語從句、原因狀語從句、目的狀語從句、結果狀語從句、比較狀語從句、讓步狀語從句、條件狀語從句等。詳見“狀語從句”。

(5) 注意：由於狀語屬於修飾性的成分,常歸入謂語,因此不作為句子的主要成分。

## 7、賓語補足語：

(1) 補充說明賓語的動作、狀態的成分為賓語補足語,常由名詞、形容詞、動詞非謂語形式(不定式、現在分詞、過去分詞等)、介詞短語等充當。如：Call him Jim, please. (請叫他Jim。)/ I tried my best to make him happy. (我竭盡所能讓他開心。)/ Ask her to come to dinner tomorrow. (請他明天來。)/ He let the smaller animals bring food to him. (他讓小動物們給他帶食物來。)

(2) 部分表示位置、方向的副詞也可以作賓語補足語。如：Let him in, I tell you! (我跟你說,讓他進來!)/ Please put it away. (請把它收起來。)

(3) 不定式或分詞作賓語補足語的情況,詳見《八·7》“動詞的非謂語形式”相關內容。

## 十二、簡單句五種基本句型：

句子包含主要句子成分(主語、謂語)和次要句子成分(表語、賓語、賓語補足語),按照動詞的性質將英語簡單句劃分為以下五種基本句型：

1、基本句型的詞序： 2、劃分符號(沒有統一規定,僅供參考)：

3、例句：Jim is working [very hard] [now]. (他現在正非常努力地工作。)

She is young. (她年輕。) It looks like rain. (天看上去要下雨。)

The boy [always] kicked the dog [with his feet]. (這男孩老是用腳踢那只狗。)

He has [never] bought me a toy [since last year]. (從去年起他沒給我買過一個玩具。)

He felt something (cold) <moving up his leg>. (他感到有個冰冷的東西順著腿)

上爬。)

#### 4、英語詞類與句子成分關係圖：

句子成分 詞類或短語 主語\* 謂語 賓語\* 表語\* 定語\* 狀語\* 賓語  
補足語 名詞 √√√× √√√ √√√× √ 代詞 √√√× √√√ √√√ √×× 形容詞 ××× √√√ √√√×  
√√ 數詞 √× √√ √√√× √動

詞 時態語態形式 × √√√××××× 動詞不定式 √√× √√√ √√√ √√√ 動名詞 √√× √√√  
√√×× 動詞現在分詞 ××× √√√ √√√ 動詞過去分詞 ××× √√√ √√√ 副詞 ××× √  
√√√√ 介詞短語 ××× √√√ √√√ [注釋] 1、“√”表示某種詞類可以充當某個成分，  
“√√”表示某種詞類經常充當某個成分，“√√√”表示某種詞類最經常充當某個成分。  
“×”表示某種詞類不能充當某個成分。

2、“\*”表示該成分可以由從句充當，如主語從句、賓語從句、狀語從句等。

#### 十三、並列複合句

##### 1、基本概念：

並列複合句是由兩個或兩個以上並列而又獨立的簡單句構成。兩個簡單句常由並列連接詞連在一起；但有時不用連接詞，只在兩個簡單句之間用一逗號或分號。

##### 2、常見的並列句：

(1) 用來連接兩個並列概念的連接詞有and, not only...but also..., neither...nor...等, and所連接的前後分句往往表示先後關係、遞進關係。前後分句的時態往往保持一致關係, 若第一個分句是祈使句, 那麼第二個分句用將來時。

(2) 表示在兩者之間選擇一個, 常用的連接詞有or, otherwise, or else, either...or...等, 前後分句的時態往往保持一致關係, 若第一個分句是祈使句, 那麼第二個分句用將來時。

(3) 表明兩個概念彼此有矛盾、相反或者轉折, 常用的連接詞有but, yet, still, however等, 前後分句時態一致。

(4) 說明原因, 用連接詞for, 前後分句時態一致。

(5) 表示結果, 用連接詞so, 前後分句時態一致。

#### 十四、主從複合句

##### 1、概念：

主從複合句由一個主句和一個或一個以上的從句構成。主句為句子的主體, 從句只用作句子的一個次要成分, 不能獨立成為一個句子。從句通常由關聯詞引導, 並由關聯詞將從句和主句聯繫在一起。如: While the grandparents love the children, they are strict with them.(爺爺奶奶們很愛孩子, 同時對他們也嚴格要求。)/ It seemed as if the meeting would never end.(看起來會議沒完沒了。)/ Hurry up, or (else) you'll be late.(快點, 要不然就來不及了。)/ However I cook eggs, the child still refuses to eat them.(不管我用什麼方法煮雞蛋, 小孩還是不肯吃。)

##### 2、分類：

從句按其在複合句中的作用, 分為主語從句、表語從句、賓語從句、定語從句和狀語從句等。(參見以下各條)

##### 3、各從句在句子中的位置以及用法：

(1) 表語從句: 在句子中作連系動詞的表語的從句, 它位於主句中的系動詞之後。

例如: That is why he did not come to school yesterday. / It is because you are so clever.

(2) 賓語從句: 在句子中作及物動詞或介詞的賓語。

①基本形式: (主句+) 連詞+從句主語+從句謂語+...

## ② 關於賓語從句連詞的選擇：

若從句來源於一個陳述句，那麼，連詞用that，在口語中that可以省略；

若從句來源於一個一般疑問句，連詞則用if 或whether；

若從句來源於一個特殊疑問句，則連詞就是疑問詞(如what,who,where,when等)

例如：They believe that the computer will finally take the place of human beings.(他們相信電腦終將代替人類。)(從句本來就是陳述句)/ I wonder whether I should say something for him to the headmaster. (我不知道是不是該為他在校長跟前說點什麼。)(從句來源於一般問句Shall I say something for him to the headmaster?) / He asked me where he could get such medicine. (他問我在哪兒能搞到那樣的藥。)(從句來源於特殊問句Where can he get such medicine?)

③ 賓語從句的時態問題：如果主句是現在時，從句則用現在某一時態，甚至可以用過去時；

如主句是過去時，從句則相應地使用過去某一時態，遇到客觀真理時仍然用現在時。如：I think I will do better in English this term. (我想本學期我的英語會學得好點。)/ The teacher asked the boy if the earth is round. (老師問那個男孩地球是不是圓的。)

## ④ 下列結構後面的從句一般也作為賓語從句看待：

be sorry / afraid / sure / glad +that從句，如：I'm sorry I'm late. (對不起，我遲到了。)/ I'm afraid he isn't in at the moment. (恐怕他此刻不在家。)

(3) 狀語從句：在複合句中作狀語，其位置可以在主句前或主句後。狀語從句可以分為時間、地點、原因、目的、結果、比較、讓步、條件等幾種。狀語從句由從屬連接詞引導。

時間狀語從句通常由when ,as ,while, after, before, since, as soon as ,since, till (until), while, whenever 等引導。時間狀語從句一般放在句首或句尾，特別注意，時間狀語從句不允許使用將來時，而應該用現在時替代。如：When you finish the work, you may go out to play with Sam. (你完成工作就可以出去和Jim一起玩了。)/ I won't leave until Mum comes back. (媽媽回來了我才會走。)

地點狀語從句通常由 where, wherever等引導。如：Go back where you came from! (哪裡來還滾到哪裡去！)/ I will never forget to catch the thief who stole my necklace wherever he may be. (我永遠也不會忘記去抓住那個偷我項鍊的賊，無論他會在哪裡。)

原因狀語從句通常由because, since, as等引導，一般放在句首或句尾。如：He went abroad because his father had found a good university for him. (他出國了，因為他父親給他找了一所好大學。)

目的狀語從句通常由so that..., so...that..., in order that... 等引導，往往放在句尾，從句中通常含有can / could / may / might等情態動詞。如：He got up earlier so that he could catch the first train. (他起身更早為的是趕上第一班車。)

結果狀語從句通常由 so that..., so...that... 等引導，放在句尾。結果狀語從句一般表示已經發生的事情，故多為過去時態。如：He lost so many bikes that he decided never to buy a new one. (他丟了那麼多輛自行車，他決定再也不買新車了。)

比較狀語從句通常由as, than, as (so)...as等引導，一般省略從句的謂語部分，只剩下名詞或代詞(用主格或賓格均可)。如：Jane is much taller than I/me. (Jane比我高多了。)/ I don't have as many books as you (do). (我書沒有你多)

讓步狀語從句通常由though (although), as, even if( even though), however, whatever等引導。如：Even if you pay the debt(債務) for me, I will not thank you because it has nothing to do with me. (即使你替我還了債我也不會感謝你，因為它與我毫無關係。)/ He wears a T-shirt though it is very cold. (他穿了一件T恤衫，儘管

天很冷。)

條件狀語從句通常由if, unless, as long as等引導,條件狀語從句一般放在句首或句尾,特別注意,時間狀語從句不允許使用將來時,而應該用現在時替代。You will certainly fail in the coming final exams unless you work much harder. (即將來到的期末考試你肯定考不及格,除非你更用功。)/ If it doesn't rain tomorrow, we shall go hiking. (如果明天不下雨我們就要去徒步旅行。)

[注意] 1、because與so; (al)though與but; if與so不可以同在一個句子中成對出現。

2、時間、條件、原因,讓步狀語從句放在句首時需要用逗號與主句隔開。

(4) 定語從句: 在複合句中作定語用修飾句子中某一名詞或代詞的從句叫定語從句。

① 定語從句的位置: 放在名詞或代詞的後面。如: The man who has an umbrella in his hand is my uncle. (手上抓了一把雨傘的人是我的叔叔。)

② 語法術語的改變: 被修飾的名詞或代詞稱為先行詞; 引導定語從句的連接詞稱為關係詞, 其中that、which、who稱為關係代詞, where、when、how稱為關係副詞。

③ 關係代詞或關係副詞的作用:

關係代詞who、whom 和whose指人, 分別在從句中作主語、賓語和定語。which指物that多指物, 有時也指人, 它們在從句中可以作主語或賓語。定語從句中關係代詞作從句賓語時可以省略。This is the thief (that/who/whom) we have been looking for these days. (這個就是我們近日一直在找的小偷。)/ Please find a room which is big enough for all of us to live in. (請找一間足夠大能住下我們全體的房間。)

關係副詞when或where引導定語從句時, 它們在從句中分別作時間狀語和地點狀語。如: This is the room where they had a quarrel a week ago. (這是一個星期前他們吵架的房間。)/ I can never forget the day when I first saw you. (我永遠不會忘記第一次見到你的日子。)

④ 限制性定語從句和非限制性定語從句。限制性定語從句在句中不能省略, 否則主句意思就不完整。非限制性定語從句和主句之間往往用逗號分開, 這種從句是一種附加說明, 如果從句子中省去, 也不致於影響主句的意思。如: She spent the whole evening talking about her latest book, which none of us had heard of. (她一個晚上都在談論她最近的書, 我們一個人都沒有聽說過那本書。)

[注解]

1、關係代詞只能用that的情況: 當先行詞是指事物的不定代詞(all, anything等), 或先行詞部分含有最高級, 或含有序數詞時, 不能用其他的關係代詞, 只能用that。如: All that Lily told me seems untrue. (Lily告訴我的話似乎不真實。)/ Can you give me anything that has no sugar inside? (能不能給我點裡面沒有糖的東西?)/ This is the first two-story bus that runs in our city. (這是第一輛運行於我市的雙層公車。)

2、關係代詞在從句中作主語時一般用who(指人)、that(指物), 而不用that指人或用which指物。如: Do you know the woman who is weeping in the corner? (你認識那個在角落裡哭泣的女人嗎?)/ Do not tell me any words that have nothing to do with me. (跟我無關的話, 請一個字也不要說。)

3、關係代詞作從句的賓語時, 常用which或whom, 較少使用that或who, 而且, 關係代詞常常省略。如: Tom's father was the first parent whom our teacher talked to. (Tom的父親是我們老師第一個談話的人。)

4、當關係代詞緊跟在介詞後面時, 必須用which或whom, 而當介詞移到句尾時, 則又可以使用that或who。如: This is the room in which Miss Li once lived. (= This is the room Miss Li once lived in.) (這是李小姐曾經居住過的房間。)

(5) 主語從句: 在句子中充當句子主語的從句叫主語從句。位於謂語動詞之前。通

常由that,whether以及疑問連詞引導。一般情況下,常用it替代主語從句,而將主語從句移到句尾。如:When we should start is still a question. (我們該在什麼時候開始還是個問題呢。)

#### 十五、直接引語和間接引語(初中不作特別要求)

1、直接引語和間接引語:在陳述句中,直接引用說話人原來的語句,稱為直接引語。在書寫時,直接引語用引號。用自己的詞語來轉述表達原來說話人說的內容,稱為間接引語。

2、直接引語改變為間接引語:

1、直接引語如果是陳述句,變為間接引語時應注意以下各點:

①不用引號,而用連接詞that,但有時可省略。

②人稱作相應變化;

③主句裡的動詞如果是過去時,間接引語中的時態一般應作相應改變:一般現在時變一般過去時;一般將來時變過去將來時;現在進行時變過去進行時;現在完成時變成過去完成時;一般過去時變成過去完成時;但一般過去時如與一個具體的過去時間連用,則時態不變。

如:He says,"I am not from the USA."→He says that he is not from the USA.

Mr Smith said to his girl friend," I haven' t seen you for a long time."

→Mr Smith said to his girl friend that he had not seen her for a long time.

2、直接引語如果是一般疑問句,變為間接引語時,需用從屬連接詞whether或if引導,詞序要改變。如:Lin Tao said to Miss Green, "Is it made in China?" →Lin Tao asked Miss Green if it was made in China.

3、直接引語如果是特殊疑問句,變為間接引語時,需用疑問詞引導,詞序是:連詞+主語+謂語。

如:Lucy said to me, "How can I help?" →Lucy asked me how she could help.

4、直接引語如是祈使句,變間接引語時,須將祈使句變為動詞不定式,並在動詞不定式前用tell, ask, order。如:He said to the little boy," Come here, young man!"

→He asked the little boy to go there.

5、直接引語變為間接引語時,指示代詞以及表示時間和地點的詞或片語應作相應變化:

在直接引語中

在間接引語中

十六、倒裝句:謂語的一部分或者全部放在主語之前的句子稱為倒裝句。

1、THERE BE句型以及以here、there開頭的句子。如:There are a lot of children in the showroom. (在展覽室裡有許多的小孩。)/ Here comes the bus. (公車來了。)/ There goes the bell. (鈴響了。)/ The door opened and in came Mr Lee. (門開了,李先生走了進來。)

2、用“So / Nor / Neither + 助動詞 + 主語”倒裝結構表示第二個人物的情況與上文的人物情況相同。如:Tom went to the beach last week, and, so did I. (Tom上個星期去了海灘,我也是。)/ Li Mei's bought nothing from the shop. Neither has Jim. (李梅沒有在店裡買什麼,Jim也沒有買。)

3、在疑問句中,通常使用在主語之前安放助動詞的倒裝方法,對主語提問除外。如:How did he find the lost book? (他是怎麼樣找到丟失的書的?)/ Where are they going to spend the summer vacation? (他們打算到哪兒過暑假?)

4、感歎句中通常將被感歎的部分前移,而將句子的主謂語整體後置。如:What a beautiful flower (it is)! (那是多漂亮的花!)

5、有引號引用某人的原話時,引號外面的主謂一般採用倒裝形式放在句尾,但是,

若主語是代詞則不倒裝。如：“What on earth are you doing up there?” said the father. (父親說：“你在上邊到底幹什麼？”) / “What on earth are you doing up there?” he said. (他說：“你在上邊到底幹什麼？”)

#### 十七、附加注釋

die、dead、death的用法：die是動詞，可以獨立做謂語，有各種時態變化，也可以變成非謂語形式作句子的其他成分；dead是形容詞，作句子的定語、表語或賓語補足語；death是名詞，作句子的主語、賓語等。如：I'm going to die! (我要死了！) / The man has been dead for about three months. (那個人死了三個月左右。) / He is worried to death. (他急得要死。)

本文由加藥裝置撰寫，轉載請注明出處。